**Reading & Vocabulary Development** 

Cause Effect

FOURTH EDITION

CN.

Patricia Ackert | Linda Lee



#### مجموعه تخصصے آیلتس مترز

ارائه جدیدترین منابع زبان انگلیسی و آمادگی آزمون آیلتس

**در دو نسخه چاپی و فایل های الکترونیکی** 

جنرال و آکادمیک

آموزش تخصصي مهارت هاي آزمون آيلتس



@IELTSMatters



@IELTS\_Matters

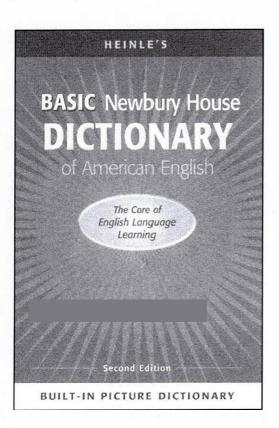


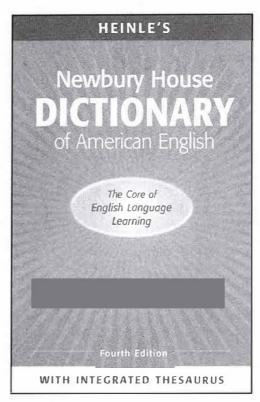
IELTSMatters.com





#### **Heinle's Newbury House Dictionaries**





The ideal supplements for vocabulary development, dictionary activities, and collocation work! Use *Heinle's Newbury House Dictionaries* to build vocabulary and increase reading skills.

#### Heinle's Newbury House Dictionary with Integrated Thesaurus

Softcover with CD-ROM....0-8384-2657-3 Hardcover ......0-8837-7017-2

#### Heinle's Basic Newbury House Dictionary

Softcover ......0-8384-2656-5 Hardcover .....0-7593-9808-9

#### Heinle's Newbury House Dictionary CD-ROM (Dual Platform)

0-8384-2661-1

#### The Heinle Picture Dictionary

0-8384-4400-8

3

#### Reading & Vocabulary Development

# Cause Effect

Fourth Edition

Patricia Ackert | Linda Lee



Australia Canada Mexico Singapore United Kingdom United States



#### Reading & Vocabulary Development 3: Cause & Effect, Fourth Edition Patricia Ackert and Linda Lee

Publisher, Adult and Academic ESL:

James W. Brown

Senior Acquisitions Editor: Sherrise Roehr Director of Development: Anita Raducanu

Development Editor: Tom Jefferies Editorial Assistant: Katherine Reilly

Senior Production Editor: Maryellen E. Killeen

**Director of Marketing:** Amy Mabley **Marketing Manager:** Laura Needham

Senior Print Buyer: Mary Beth Hennebury Compositor: Pre-Press Company, Inc. Project Manager: Sally Lifland, Lifland et al.,

Bookmakers

Photo Researcher: Gail Magin Illustrator: Barry Burns

Cover Designer: Ha Ngyuen Text Designer: Quica Ostrander

**Printer:** Edwards Brothers

Copyright © 2006 by Thomson Heinle, a part of The Thomson Corporation. Thomson, Heinle and the Thomson logo are trademarks used herein under license.

All rights reserved. No part of this work covered by the copyright hereon may be reproduced or used in any form or by any means—graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, Web distribution or information storage and retrieval systems—without the written permission of the publisher.

Trademark and Copyright 2004 Cable News Network LP, LLLP. A Time Warner Company. All Rights Reserved. Licensed by Turner Learning, Inc. A Time Warner Company. All Rights Reserved.

Printed in the United States of America 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 07

For more information contact Heinle, 25 Thomson Place, Boston, Massachusetts 02210 USA, or you can visit our Internet site at http://www.elt.thomson.com

For permission to use material from this text or product contact us:

Tel

1-800-730-2214

Fax 1-800-730-2215

Web www.thomsonrights.com

ISBN 13 : 978-1-4130-0416-8 ISBN 10 : 1-4130-0416-4

ISE ISBN 13 : 978-1-4130-0447-2 ISE ISBN 10 : 1-4130-0447-4

Library of Congress Control Number: 2005921000

#### Contents

To the Instructor Acknowledgments ix

| TELL                                 | Unit 1                                | Explorers  | _1  |            |           |    |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|---|------------|-----------|----|
| Lesson<br>Lesson<br>Lesson<br>Lesson | 2 Alexand<br>3 Vitus Be<br>4 Robert S | nd Wills: Across<br>Ira David-Neel:<br>Pring: Across Sib<br>Scott: A Race to t | A French W<br>eria to Nort<br>he South Po | h America  | pet<br>20 | 10 |
| Lesson                               | 5 Into the                            | Deep: Ocean Ex   | ploration                                 | 40         |           |    |
|                                      | on Activities                         |  |   |            |           |    |
|                                      | 0 0                                   | hts: CNN Video   | •   | xploration | 50        |    |
| A                                    | Activity Page:                        | Adventure Trail  | 52  |            |           |    |
| Ι                                    | Dictionary Page                       | ge: Understandir   | ng Definitio                              | ns 53      |           |    |

#### World Issues Unit 2

| Lesson 1                                    | World Population Grov | vth | 56  |  |  |  |  |
|---|-----------------------|-----|-----|--|--|--|--|
| Lesson 2                                    | Changes in the Family | 68  |     |  |  |  |  |
| Lesson 3                                    | Women and Change      | 78  |     |  |  |  |  |
| Lesson 4                                    | Rain Forests 88       |     | (2) |  |  |  |  |
| Lesson 5                                    | The Garbage Project   | 98  |     |  |  |  |  |
| Extension Activities                        |                       |     |     |  |  |  |  |
| Video Highlights: CNN Video, Lalita's Story |                       |     |     |  |  |  |  |
| Activity Page: Crossword Puzzle 109         |                       |     |     |  |  |  |  |

107 Dictionary Page: Working with Word Forms 110

#### Unit 3 A Mishmash, or Hodgepodge 111

55

| Lesson 1                            | Roadrunners 112                      |          |     |  |  |  |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------|-----|--|--|--|
| Lesson 2                            | Afraid to Fly 122                    |          |     |  |  |  |
| Lesson 3                            | Languages and Language Diversity     | 132      |     |  |  |  |
| Lesson 4                            | Skyscrapers 143                      |          |     |  |  |  |
| Lesson 5                            | Left-Handedness 153                  |          |     |  |  |  |
| Extension A                         | ctivities                            |          |     |  |  |  |
| Video                               | Highlights: CNN Video, The Green Ski | yscraper | 16  |  |  |  |
| Activity Page: Familiar Phrases 165 |                                      |          |     |  |  |  |
| Dictio                              | onary Page: Understanding Grammar (  | Codes    | 166 |  |  |  |

iii

163

| ¢ U       | nit 4     | Science           | 167               |           |     |
|-----------|-----------|-------------------|-------------------|-----------|-----|
| Lesson 1  |           | neres in Space    | 168               |           |     |
| Lesson 2  | Eartho    | uakes 177         |                   |           |     |
| Lesson 3  | Snow      | and Hail 18       | 9                 |           |     |
| Lesson 4  | Photo     | voltaic Cells: En | ergy Source of th | ne Future | 198 |
| Lesson 5  | Biolog    | cical Clocks      | 209               |           |     |
| Extension | Activitie | es                |                   |           |     |
| Vide      | eo Highl  | ights: CNN Vid    | eo, Ozone Depleti | on 220    |     |
| Acti      | vity Pag  | e: Chemical Cro   | ssword Puzzle     | 222       |     |
|           |           |                   | ionary Research   | 223       |     |

#### \*

#### Unit 5 Medicine and Health

225

| Lesson 1    | Headaches 226                                 |
|-------------|---|
| Lesson 2    | Sleep and Dreams 236                          |
| Lesson 3    | Health Care and Epidemics 246                 |
| Lesson 4    | Medicine: From Leeches to Lasers 258          |
| Lesson 5    | Cholesterol and Heart Disease 268             |
| Extension A | Activities                                    |
| Video       | Highlights: CNN Video, The Singing Doctor 281 |
| Activ       | rity Page: Who Said What? 283                 |
| Dictio      | onary Page: Learning About Word Stress 285    |

Vocabulary 287 Skills Index 291

#### To the Instructor

Reading & Vocabulary Development 3: Cause & Effect is a bestselling beginning reading skills text designed for students of English as a second or foreign language who have a basic vocabulary in English of about 1,300 words. This text teaches about 700 more words.

Cause & Effect is one in a series of reading skills texts. The complete series has been designed to meet the needs of students from the beginning to the high intermediate levels and includes the following:

Reading & Vocabulary Development 1: Facts & Figures Reading & Vocabulary Development 2: Thoughts & Notions

Reading & Vocabulary Development 3: Cause & Effect

Reading & Vocabulary Development 4: Concepts & Comments

In addition to the student text, an answer key, VHS, DVD, audio cassette, and audio CD are also available. *Cause & Effect* uses the following methodology:

- Theme-based approach to reading. Each of the five units has a theme such as world issues, science, or health.
- Systematic presentation and recycling of vocabulary. One of the primary tasks of students is developing a useful and personally relevant vocabulary base. In Cause & Effect, up to 24 words are introduced in each lesson. These words appear in boldface type. Those underlined are illustrated or glossed in the margin. All of the new vocabulary items are used several times in the lesson, and then are systematically recycled throughout the text.
- **Pedagogical design.** The central goal of *Cause & Effect* is to help students develop the critical reading skills they will need for academic, personal, and/or career purposes. By any standard, the range of exercise types in *Cause & Effect* is rich and varied. This text provides students with practice in comprehension, building vocabulary, making inferences, finding the main idea, determining cause and effect, scanning, summarizing, paraphrasing, understanding

the sequence of events, and learning to work more effectively with two-word verbs, compound words, connecting words, and noun substitutes.



#### Organization of Cause & Effect

Cause & Effect is organized into five units. Each unit contains five lessons packed with exercises and activities.

- "Before You Read" Questions. These pre-reading questions provide a motivation for reading the text.
- Context Clues. A context clue exercise at the beginning of each lesson introduces some of the vocabulary for the following lesson. This section is designed to pre-teach particularly important vocabulary items.
- **Vocabulary.** The first two exercises give practice with new words in a different context but with the same meaning.
- **Vocabulary Review.** Vocabulary items are used in subsequent texts and exercises to give additional review. They are fill-ins or matching synonyms and antonyms.
- Comprehension. First is a set of true/false, true/false/not enough information, or multiple choice questions. Then come comprehension questions, which include inference and discussion questions. The comprehension questions may also be given as written assignments.
- Main Idea. Students must choose the main idea of a paragraph from three possibilities.
- Word Study. A selection of word study exercises is provided at the end of each lesson. It reinforces structural points, such as verb forms, two-word verbs, and articles, that the students are learning in other classes. It also gives spelling rules for noun plurals and verb endings. Later units have charts of word forms. The exercises are not intended to be complete explanations and practice of the grammar points.
  - Writing. Each lesson closes with a writing exercise.

 Extension Activities. Each unit ends with a set of highinterest, interactive tasks to help students practice the new vocabulary and the skills they have learned in more open-ended contexts.

CNN Video Highlights—The highlight of each set of extension activities is a short video-based lesson centered on a stimulating, authentic clip from the CNN video archives. Each video lesson follows the same sequence of activities:

Before You Watch encourages students to recall background knowledge based on their own experiences or from information presented in the readings.

As You Watch asks students to watch for general information such as the topic of the clip.

After You Watch gets the students to expand on the main points of the video by establishing further connections to the reading passages, their own experiences, and their ideas and opinions.

Activity Page—Games found on this page encourage students to practice the vocabulary and structures found in that unit's lessons in a relaxed, open-ended way.

**Dictionary Page**—Exercises on this page offer students practice with dictionary skills based on entries from *The Newbury House Dictionary of American English*.

• **Skills Index.** This index provides teachers and students with a handy reference for all of the reading and writing skills introduced in *Cause & Effect*, as well as all of the grammatical structures found in the text.



#### New to This Edition

The best-selling reading series just got better! The fourth edition of *Cause & Effect* contains new readings, new pedagogy, and new ancillaries.

- Four fresh new readings engage students in fascinating new topics. The new readings for this edition are as follows:
  - Unit 1, Lesson 5: Into the Deep: Ocean Exploration
  - Unit 2, Lesson 5: The Garbage Project
  - Unit 3, Lesson 3: Languages and Language Diversity
  - Unit 5, Lesson 4: Medicine: From Leeches to Lasers
- Thoroughly updated and checked for factual accuracy, each reading has been revised to include level-appropriate structures and vocabulary.
- New pedagogical design, photos, and illustrations aid student comprehension and ease navigation through the text.
- *ExamView*® *Pro* test-generating software allows instructors to create custom tests and quizzes.
- A new website (found at <a href="http://elt.thomson.com/">http://elt.thomson.com/</a> readingandvocabulary) features vocabulary flashcards, crossword puzzles, quizzes, and more to help students review for tests.

#### Acknowledgments

The authors and publisher would like to thank the following individuals who offered helpful feedback and suggestions for the revision of the *Reading & Vocabulary Development* series:

Brian Altano—Bergen Community College, Paramus, NJ

Benjamin Deleon—Delano High School, Delano, CA

Elaine Dow—Quinsigamond Community College, Worcester, MA

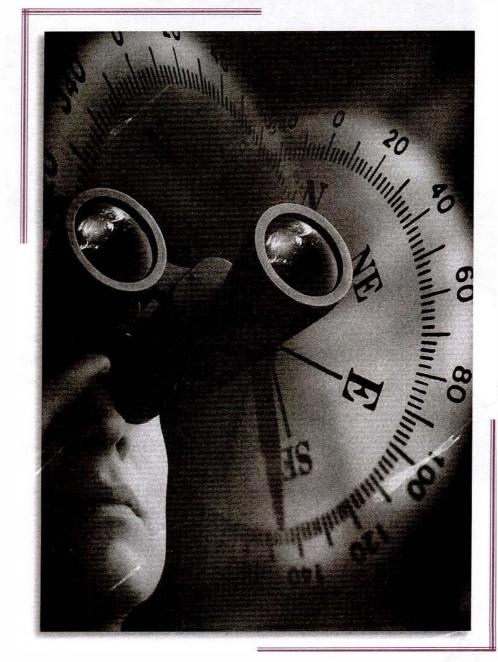
Julia Karet—Chaffey College, Rancho Cucamonga, CA

Jane Sitko-Edmonds Community College, Lynnwood, WA



One doesn't discover new lands without consenting to lose sight of the shore for a very long time.

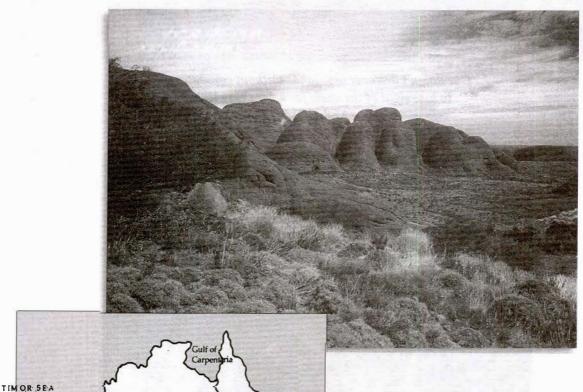
—André Gide



#### lesson

### Burke and Wills: Across Australia

### 1



© Howard Davies./CORBIS

#### Before You Read

- 1. What information about Australia do the map and the photograph give you?
- 2. Is Australia larger or smaller than your country?
- 3. What else do you know about Australia?

AUSTRALIA

SOUTHERN OCEAN

PACIFIC

OCEAN

### 1 Burke and Wills: Across Australia



Australia is a huge country, and the outback (the Australian word for the <u>interior</u> of the country) is desert. In some years, it rains only eight centimeters in the outback, but in other years, rainstorms <u>turn</u> the desert <u>into</u> sandy swamps.

Until the eighteenth century, only **aborigines** lived in Australia. These are the first people who lived in Australia. When Europeans went there to live, they **built** towns on the coast. However, in the 1850s, people began thinking more about the interior.

In 1860, Robert O'Hara Burke, a police officer from Ireland, was **chosen** to lead an **expedition** across the continent from south to north. He took with him William John Wills and eleven other men, camels, horses, and enough **supplies** for a year and a half.

They left Melbourne for the Gulf of Carpentaria on August 20, winter in the southern <a href="hemisphere">hemisphere</a>.

The expedition had problems from the beginning.
Burke had no experience in the outback. The men fought
and would not follow <u>orders.</u> Twice they left some of
their supplies so that they could move faster and later
sent one of the men, William Wright, back for them.

Finally, a small group led by Burke moved on ahead of the others to a river named Cooper's Creek and set up their base camp. They were halfway across the continent, but it was summer now, with very hot weather and sandstorms.

They waited a month for Wright, and then Burke decided that four from his small group, with three months' supplies, should travel the 1,250 kilometers to the north coast as quickly as possible. They told the others to wait for them at Cooper's Creek.

The journey across the desert was very difficult, but at the end of January, they reached the Flinders River inside; away from the coast

turn into = change (something); become

past participle of *choose* 

food and other necessary things

half of the Earth or any other sphere

commands; directions

at last



near the Gulf of Carpentaria. They started their return journey, but now it was the rainy season and traveling was slow and even more difficult than on their trip north. They did not have enough food, and the men became hungry and sick. Then one of them died. Some
 of the camels died or were killed for food.

Finally, on April 21, they arrived back at Cooper's Creek, only to find that no one was there. The rest of the expedition had left the day before because they thought Burke must be dead.

The men continued south, but without enough food, both Burke and Wills died. Aborigines helped the last man who was still alive, and a **search party** found him in September 1861. He was half crazy from hunger and **loneliness.** 

a group of people who look for someone who is lost

There were many reasons that the expedition did not go as planned. It had an inexperienced leader, the men made bad decisions, some did not follow orders, and they did not **get along.** But it was the first expedition to cross Australia, and Burke and Wills are still known as

be friendly; not fight

55 heroes of exploration.



#### **a** Vocabulary

In this book, difficult words are repeated several times in the exercises. These words are also repeated and reviewed in other lessons. It is not necessary to list new English words with their meanings in your own language. You will learn them just by practicing. In each lesson, when you read the text the first time, underline the words you don't know. Then you can give yourself a test when you finish the lesson. Look at the words you underlined and see if you understand them. If you don't know them yet, this is the time to memorize them.

In the Vocabulary exercises in this book, write the correct word in each blank. Use a word only once. Use capital letters where they are necessary.

|     | finally<br>aborigines | orders             | expedition<br>base | loneliness           |
|-----|-----------------------|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1.  | The captain of a sh   |                    |                    |                      |
|     | follow them.          | 1 0                |                    |                      |
| 2.  | In baseball, a playe  | r hits the ball an | d runs to first    |                      |
| 3.  | The first Australian  | s are called       | and the same trans |                      |
| 4.  | Most of the Earth h   | as been explored   | d. Now we are in t | the age of space     |
|     |                       | _, searching for   | more information   | about the stars, the |
|     | moon, and other pl    | anets besides Ea   | rth.               |                      |
| 5.  | Kumiko                | well               | with everyone. Sh  | e is always nice and |
|     | never fights with p   | eople.             |                    |                      |
| 6.  | We                    | our new h          | ome from the woo   | od and stone on      |
|     | our land.             |                    |                    |                      |
| 7.  |                       | _ is a common f    | eeling when you a  | are far from your    |
|     | friends and family.   |                    |                    |                      |
| 8.  | Asia is in the northe | ern                | <u></u>            |                      |
| 9.  | The writer Jane Aus   | sten said, "       | do                 | oings never          |
|     | prosper." I think she | e meant that it's  | important to com   | plete things.        |
| 10. | People who win in     | the Olympic Gai    | mes are            | in                   |
|     | their countries.      |                    |                    |                      |

Telegram:@IELTSMatters

#### **b** Vocabulary

| Do  | this exercise the san | ne way you did Exerc | rise a.             |                        |
|-----|-----------------------|----------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
|     | chosen                |                      | party               | explored               |
|     | build                 | interior             |                     |                        |
|     | searching             | * *                  | •                   |                        |
| 1.  | Burke and Wills l     | led an               | into the            | interior of Australia. |
| 2.  | The explorer Chr      | istopher Columbus    | was                 | for a new              |
|     | way to go to Indi     | a.                   |                     |                        |
| 3.  | Burke and Wills       |                      | _ the interior of A | Australia.             |
| 4.  | Birds like to live    | in                   | because the         | re is a lot of water   |
|     | and food.             |                      |                     |                        |
| 5.  | We use one kind       | of paint for the     |                     | of a house and         |
|     | another kind for      | the exterior.        |                     |                        |
| 6.  | After three days of   | of driving, I        | ar                  | rived at the coast.    |
| 7.  | A search              | was se               | ent to find the Bu  | ırke and               |
|     | Wills expedition.     |                      |                     |                        |
| 8.  | The president of t    | the United States is |                     | by the people          |
|     | who vote.             |                      |                     |                        |
| 9.  | The secretary ord     | ered paper, pens, ar | nd other            | for                    |
|     | the office.           |                      |                     |                        |
| 10. | Carlos started to s   | study hard, and he   | eventually          | a                      |
|     | good student.         |                      |                     |                        |

#### C True/False

Write **T** if the sentence is true. Write **F** if it is false. If a sentence is false, change it to make it true or explain why it is false. An asterisk (\*) before an item means that the answer is either an **inference** or an **opinion**. You cannot find the answer in a sentence in the text. You have to think about the information in the text and things you already know and then decide on the answer.

|   | 1. The first Europeans in Australia built villages in the outback  |
|---|--|
|   | because there were too many aborigines on the coast.               |
|   | 2. The Burke and Wills expedition crossed Australia from south     |
|   | to north.  |
| × | 3. December is a summer month in Australia.                        |
|   | 4. Much of the interior of Australia is swampy all year long.      |
|   | 5. Eleven men crossed Australia with Burke and Wills.              |
| × | 6. Burke and Wills did not have enough food for their journey back |
|   | to Cooper's Creek because the rain slowed them down.               |
| * | 7. The aborigines could help the last man still alive because they |
|   | understood how to live in the desert.                              |
|   | 8 Burke was a good leader for this expedition                      |



#### Comprehension Questions

Answer these questions in complete sentences. An asterisk (\*) means that the answer is either an **inference** or an **opinion**. You cannot find the exact answer in the text.

- 1. Where did the first Europeans live when they went to Australia?
- \*2. Why were camels good animals for this expedition?
- 3. Why did the men leave some of their supplies behind?
- 4. Why was it difficult to travel in the interior of Australia?
- 5. What happened to some of the camels?
- 6. Give two reasons why this expedition had so many problems.
- \*7. Do you think Burke and Wills should be called heroes of exploration? Why?





#### Main Idea

What is the main idea of paragraph 4 (lines 18-22)?

- a. Robert Burke led this expedition.
- b. The expedition had many problems.
- c. Burke had no experience in the outback.



#### Two-Word Verbs

English has many two-word verbs. Each of the two words is easy, but when they are put together, they mean something different. There is often no way to guess what they mean. You have to learn each one.

Learn these two-word verbs and then fill in the blanks with the right words. Use the correct verb form.

|    | turn into           | =     | change (something)                        | into; become   |   |  |
|----|---------------------|-------|---|--|---|--|
|    | get along (with)    | =     | not fight; be friendly                    |  |   |  |
|    | break down          | =     | stop going or working                     | ng (often said about a car)  |   |  |
|    | call on             | =     | ask (someone) to spe<br>student to speak) | ask (someone) to speak (as when a teacher asks a student to speak) |   |  |
|    | put away            | =     | put (something) in the                    | he place where it belongs  |   |  |
| 1. | Our washing mad     | chir  | ne  | _ yesterday, and I couldn't finis                                  | ł |  |
|    | washing my cloth    | nes.  |   |  |   |  |
| 2. | Tommy and his li    | ittle | brother don't                             | very well. They  |   |  |
|    | fight about somet   | thin  | g almost every day.                       |  |   |  |
| 3. | Ali knew the answ   | wer   | when the teacher                          | him.   |   |  |
| 4. | It was rainy this r | nor   | ning, but now it has _                    | a beautiful  |   |  |
|    | day.                |       |   |  |   |  |
| 5. | Mary doesn't usu    | ally  | 7   | her clothes. She just leaves                                       |   |  |
|    | them on a chair o   | r th  | e bed.                                    | - 1  |   |  |

#### **g** Articles: A, An, The

There are so many rules about articles that it is easier just to get used to them by practicing than to learn all the rules. However, you will learn a few of the rules later in this book.

Here are some sentences or parts of sentences from the text. Put an article in the blank if it is necessary.

| 1. | In other years, rainstorms turn desert into sandy swamps.         |
|----|---|
| 2. | Until eighteenth century, only aborigines lived in Australia.     |
| 3. | In 1860, Robert O'Hara Burke, police officer from Ireland,        |
|    | was chosen to lead expedition across continent from south         |
|    | to north.   |
| 4. | He took with him William John Wills and eleven other men, camels, |
|    | horses, and enough supplies for year and half.                    |
| 5. | expedition had problems from beginning.                           |
| 6. | men fought and would not follow orders.                           |
|    |   |
| h  | Guided Writing  |

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. You are the last person still alive from the Burke and Wills expedition. It is September 1861, and the search party has just found you. Tell them what happened to you.
- 2. You are the leader of another expedition across Australia. Explain what you will do differently.



Instagram:@IELTS\_Matters

#### lesson

### Alexandra David-Neel: A French Woman in Tibet

### 2



#### Before You Read

- 1. What do you know about the history and geography of Tibet?
- 2. What information does the photograph give you about Alexandra David-Neel?
- 3. Alexandra David-Neel traveled alone to Tibet in the early twentieth century. What do you think her goal was?



#### **Context Clues**

It is not necessary to look up every new word in the dictionary. You can often tell what a word means from the sentence it is in or from the sentences after it. For example, the word **aborigines** in line 6 on page 3 is explained in the next sentence. Take a look. What are aborigines? Always look for context clues when you are reading. Try not to look up every new word in your dictionary.

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means. Do all of the Context Clues exercises in the book this way.

- 1. David-Neel was very unhappy when she was a child. She **escaped** her unhappiness by reading books on adventure and travel.
- 2. Later, she studied the Buddhist religion and wrote **articles** and books about it.
- 3. In 1903, she started working as a **journalist**, writing articles about Asia and Buddhism for English and French magazines and newspapers.
- 4. She wrote her husband long letters full of **details** about her travels.
- 5. For centuries, Tibet was a **secret** and mysterious place to the rest of the world. Only a few foreigners were able to visit the area.



Telegram:@IELTSMatters

#### 2 Alexandra David-Neel: A French Woman in Tibet



Tibet has been a **secret** and mysterious place to the rest of the world for several centuries. It is on a high plateau in Asia, **surrounded** by even higher mountains, and only a few foreigners were able to cross its **borders** until recently.

One of these foreigners was a French woman named Alexandra David-Neel (1868–1969). She traveled by herself in India, China, and Tibet. She studied the Buddhist religion, wrote articles and books about it, and collected ancient Buddhist books. She also became a Buddhist herself.

legal lines between countries

David-Neel always said she had an unhappy childhood. She escaped her unhappiness by reading books on adventure and travel. She <u>ran away</u> from school several times and even ran away to England when she was only 16.

left without telling anyone

She was a singer for several years, but in 1903 she started working as a **journalist**, writing articles about Asia and Buddhism for English and French magazines and newspapers. The next year, when she was 37, she married Philippe-François Neel. It was an unusual marriage. After five days together, they moved to different cities and never lived together again. Yet he **supported** her all his life, and she wrote him hundreds of long letters full of **details** about her travels.

gave (her) money to live on

She traveled all over Europe and North Africa, but she went to India in 1911 to study Buddhism, and then her real travels began. She traveled in India and also in Nepal and Sikkim, the small countries north of India in the Himalaya Mountains, but her goal was Tibet. She continued to study Buddhism and learned to speak Tibetan. She traveled to villages and religious centers, with only an interpreter and a few men to carry her camping equipment. For several months, she lived in a cave in Sikkim and studied Buddhism and the Tibetan



cave

language. Then she **adopted** a 15-year-old Sikkimese boy to travel with her. He <u>remained</u> with her until his death at the age of 55.

For the next seven years, she traveled in <a href="remote">remote</a>
areas of China. These were years of <a href="remote">civil war</a> in China,
and she was often in danger. She traveled for
thousands of kilometers on horseback with only a few
men to help her—through desert heat and sandstorms
and the rain, snow, and freezing temperatures of the
colder areas.

In 1924, David-Neel was 56 years old. She darkenedher skin and dressed as an old <u>beggar</u>. She carried only a beggar's bowl and a backpack and traveled through hot lowlands and snowy mountain passes until she reached the border of Tibet. Because she spoke Tibetan so well, she was able to cross the border and reach the famous city of Lhasa without anyone knowing that she was European and forbidden to be there. It was often freezing cold, and sometimes there wasn't enough food. Sometimes she was sick, and once she nearly died. This was the most dangerous of all her journeys, but she reached her goal and collected more information about Tibetan Buddhism.

She returned to France in 1925. She spent several years writing about her <u>research</u> and adventures and translating ancient Tibetan religious books. When she was 66, she returned to China and the Tibetan border area for ten years. In 1944, the Second World War reached even that remote area, and at the age of 76, she walked for days, sometimes without food, until she was able to reach a place from which she could fly to India and then home to France. She continued writing and translating until she died, just seven weeks before her 101st birthday.

Most explorers traveled to discover and map new places. David-Neel went to do research on Buddhism. She said that freedom was the most important thing in life for her, and, <u>like</u> many other explorers, she lived a dangerous, exciting, free life.

stayed

far from towns war between people in the same country



search for new information

similar to



#### Vocabulary

|     | rite the correct wor<br>ry are necessary. | d in each blank. Use a | n word only once, ar | nd use capital letters ij |
|-----|---|------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
|     | civil war                                 | temperature            | like                 | border                    |
|     | childhood                                 | •                      | secret               | beggars                   |
|     | caves                                     | journalist             |                      |                           |
| 1.  |   | im about his birthd    | ay party. We want    | red it to be              |
|     | a   |                        |                      |                           |
| 2.  | There is an interabout Tibet.             | resting                | in the ne            | wspaper today             |
| 3.  | You can find                              |                        | sking for money:     | in most countries.        |
| 4.  | She lived in Asi                          | a when she was an      | adult, but she spe   | nt her                    |
|     |   | in England.            | 1                    |                           |
| 5.  |   | orth Americans live    | ed in                |                           |
|     | built houses.                             |                        |                      |                           |
| 6   |   |                        | is 98.6 degrees Fa   | hrenheit                  |
|     |   |                        |                      | nere for several years    |
|     |   |                        |                      | hern states fought a      |
| 0.  |   | that lasted from       |                      | nem states rought a       |
| 0   |   |                        |                      | een China and India       |
|     | •   |                        |                      |                           |
| 10. |   |                        | rmation and then     | writes articles abou      |
|     | it for magazines                          | and newspapers.        |                      |                           |
| b   | Vocabulary                                |                        |                      |                           |
|     | nember to underlin                        |                        | know as you read i   | the text, and then test   |
| J   | remote                                    | escaped                | like                 | real                      |
|     | details                                   | surrounded             | support              | journalist                |
|     | adopted                                   | research               | borders              | ran away from             |
| 1.  | Everyone calls h                          | er Ellie, but her      |                      | name is Elizabeth.        |
|     |   | ol in hot weather be   |                      |                           |
|     | big trees.                                |                        |                      | - 7                       |
|     | O .                                       |                        |                      |                           |

| 3   | . Nepal, Tibet, is in the Himalaya Mountains.   |
|-----|---|
| 4   | . Mr. and Mrs. Thompson a baby because they   |
|     | couldn't have children of their own.  |
| 5.  | . He school when he was 15 years old and joined   |
|     | the navy.   |
| 6.  | . Most English paragraphs have a main idea and supporting   |
|     |   |
| 7   | . Parents usually their children until the children   |
|     | finish school. The parents pay for everything the children need.  |
| 8.  | Dr. Garcia is doing for space exploration.  |
| 9.  | Her friends live in a part of Alaska. The only way to   |
|     | get there is  |
|     | by plane.   |
| 10. | A snake from the zoo last night. If you see it, call the  |
|     | police immediately.   |
| 125 |   |
| C   | Multiple Choice   |
| Cin | and the letter of the best exercise. As retaining (*) means that the exercise is  |
|     | cle the letter of the best answer. An asterisk (*) means that the answer is an erence or opinion. You cannot find the answer in a sentence in the text. |
| -   | Alexandra David-Neel went to Asia to  |
| 1.  | a. study Buddhism   |
|     | b. lead an expedition   |
|     | c. adopt a son  |
| 2.  | When she was a child, she read to   |
|     | a. become a Buddhist  |
|     | <ul><li>b. escape her unhappiness</li><li>c. learn about Europe</li></ul>   |
| 3   | After she got married,  |
| 0.  | a. she lived in Europe with her husband for several years   |
|     | b. her husband supported her  |
|     | c. her husband traveled in Europe with her  |
| *4. | It is possible that she   |
|     | a. took photographs during her travels  |
|     | <ul><li>b. had a car when she lived in a cave</li><li>c. spoke Tibetan to her Indian friends</li></ul>  |
|     | c. Spoke Tibetait to her maint menas  |

Instagram:@IELTS\_Matters

- 5. The place she wanted most to visit was \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. India
  - b. China
  - c. Tibet
- 6. Her travels in China were dangerous because \_\_\_\_\_
  - a. there was a civil war
  - b. she was traveling on horseback
  - c. she was a beggar
- 7. David-Neel said that \_\_\_\_\_
  - a. she wasn't afraid of danger
  - b. freedom was very important to her
  - c. she wanted her husband to travel with her

#### d

#### Comprehension Questions

Always answer the comprehension questions with complete sentences.

- 1. Why is Tibet a mysterious place?
- \*2. Why did David-Neel run away from school?
- 3. What is a journalist?
- 4. What was unusual about her marriage?
- 5. What did she do when she was living in a cave?
- 6. What does remote areas mean?
- 7. Why didn't the Tibetans know she was a foreigner?
- 8. What kind of work did she do after her last trip?
- \*9. Do you think she lived a free life? Why?



#### Main Idea

What is the main idea of paragraph 3 (lines 11-15)?

- a. David-Neel read books on travel and adventure.
- b. David-Neel ran away from school several times.
- c. David-Neel had an unhappy childhood.





Choose a word form from line 1 of the chart to use in sentence 1, and so on. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns. There are empty spaces on the chart because there are not four forms for every word.

|     | Verb     | Noun                 | Adjective   | Adverb     |
|-----|----------|----------------------|-------------|------------|
| 1.  | adopt    | adoption             | adopted     |            |
| 2.  | surround | surroundings         | surrounding |            |
| 3.  | beg      | beggar               |             |            |
| 4.  |          | hero                 | heroic      | heroically |
| 5.  | remain   | remainder<br>remains | remaining   |            |
| 6.  | supply   | supply               | supplied    |            |
| 7.  | explore  | exploration          |             |            |
| 8.  | secrete  | secret               | secretive   | secretly   |
| 9.  |          | reality              | real        | really     |
| 10. | choose   | choice               | choice      |            |

| 1. | Many children want to meet their birth parents.               |  |  |
|----|---|--|--|
| 2. | Dan drove so fast on his vacation trip that he hardly saw his |  |  |
|    |   |  |  |
| 3. | Small children often to go with their parents when            |  |  |
|    | the parents go out at night.                                  |  |  |
| 4. | Jumping into the freezing water to save the child was a       |  |  |
|    | action.   |  |  |
| 5. | They ate half the chicken and put the in the                  |  |  |
|    | refrigerator for the next day.                                |  |  |
| 6. | The company was unable to most of the things                  |  |  |
|    | we ordered.   |  |  |
| 7. | Are you more interested in the of outer space or the          |  |  |
|    | Earth's oceans?   |  |  |

| 8. I don't know why my children are being so today.   |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| Usually they like to tell me where they are going.  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 9. Can you help me? I'm having trouble with this computer.  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 10. I can't decide which movie to see. You make the   |  |  |  |  |  |
|   |  |  |  |  |  |
|   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Articles  |  |  |  |  |  |
| A and an are used to show that the noun after it is one of a group.                               |  |  |  |  |  |
| John Burke was <b>an</b> explorer. (He was one of many explorers throughout history.)             |  |  |  |  |  |
| Maria is a student. (She is one of many students in the world.)                                   |  |  |  |  |  |
| I took an apple out of the refrigerator. (It is one of many apples in the world.)                 |  |  |  |  |  |
| The is used to show that the noun is one special, particular, specific case of the noun or nouns. |  |  |  |  |  |
| John Burke and William John Wills were the first explorers to cross Australia.                    |  |  |  |  |  |
| Maria is <b>the</b> best student in the class.  |  |  |  |  |  |
| I took <b>the</b> apple out of the refrigerator. (There was only one apple in the refrigerator.)  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Put the right article in the blanks.  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1. Australia is huge country.   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2 journalist who wrote this article is a friend of mine.  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3. David-Neel was journalist.   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 4. Please close door.   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 5. Her office is first one on the left.   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 6 professor called you today, but I don't know who it was.  |  |  |  |  |  |

7. Who was \_\_\_\_\_ worst teacher you ever had?



#### Compound Words

Compound words are common in English. They are two words put together, and the meaning of the compound word is related to the meanings of the two words. They are not like two-word verbs, whose meaning is different from the meaning of each word by itself.

Put these compound words in the right blanks in the sentences below.

|    | horseback<br>mailbox                                      | sandstorm<br>sidewalk  | snowstorm<br>doorbell | keyhole<br>weekend |  |  |  |
|----|---|--|-----------------------|--------------------|--|--|--|
| 1. | Barbara couldn't  | Sarbara couldn't drive to her parents' house last week because there was a |                       |                    |  |  |  |
|    | bad, and it was very cold.                                |  |                       |                    |  |  |  |
| 2. | Abdullah looks in his every day, and he usually find      |  |                       |                    |  |  |  |
|    | a letter.   |  |                       |                    |  |  |  |
| 3. | A is a place for people to walk at the side of the street |  |                       |                    |  |  |  |
| 4. | When you unlock a door, you put your key in the           |  |                       |                    |  |  |  |
| 5. | The   | rang, and S  | Susan went to open th | ne door.           |  |  |  |
| 6. | Did you ever go _   | - 7  | riding?               |                    |  |  |  |
|    |   |  |                       |                    |  |  |  |



#### Guided Writing

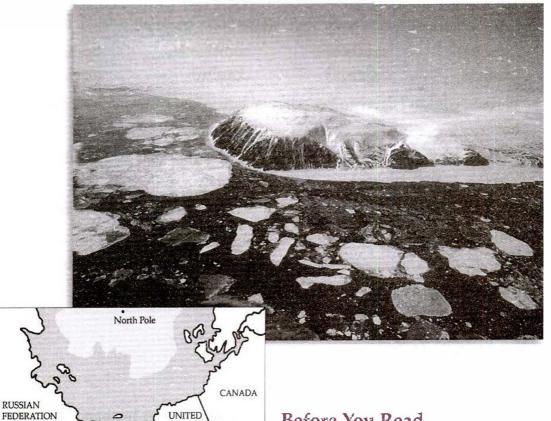
Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. You are Alexandra David-Neel. Write a letter to your husband. Describe one or two of your adventures in some detail. Add your own ideas about what you saw, heard, tasted, touched, or smelled.
- 2. Describe an adventure you had or an unusual trip you took. Use details about what you saw, heard, tasted, touched, or smelled.



#### lesson

#### **Vitus Bering: Across** Siberia to **North America**



## Jacques Langevin/CORBIS SYGMA

#### Before You Read

- 1. How can you get from Siberia to Alaska?
- 2. What is the name of the body of water between Siberia and Alaska?
- 3. Which are longer in Siberia and Alaska, winters or summers?

UNITED

#### **Context Clues**

You can often guess the meaning of a word from the sentence, even if the sentence doesn't explain the word exactly. For example, in this lesson, one sentence says, "They lost a lot of food when one of the ships sank in a storm." What could a storm do to a ship so that the food was lost? The ship probably went down into the water to the bottom of the ocean. When you can guess easily what a word means from the sentence, don't look up the word in your dictionary.

Now practice with these new words from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each **bold** word means.

- 1. Vitus Bering wanted to explore the east coast of Siberia and to find out if Asia and North America were **joined**.
- 2. Bering made careful plans for his trip, but there were many **delays.** Because of this, he had only one summer to explore the area instead of two years.
- 3. Bering's expedition **gathered** important scientific information about the interior of Siberia.
- 4. When scientists read Bering's reports, they **realized** that he was a great explorer.
- 5. The water between Siberia and Alaska is now called the Bering Sea to **remind** us of this great explorer.



#### **Vitus Bering: Across Siberia to North America**



In 1733, the most complete scientific expedition in history up to that time left St. Petersburg, Russia. The goal of the expedition was to explore the east coast of Siberia and to find out if Asia and North America were 5 **joined.** The scientists planned to report on everything: the geography, climate, plants, animals, and customs and languages of the Siberian people.

The expedition had to cross Siberia in order to reach the Pacific Ocean. Vitus Bering, the leader of the whole 10 expedition, left St. Petersburg with almost 600 people. The group **included** a few scientists, **skilled** workers of all kinds, soldiers, and sailors. Alexei Chirikov left later, with most of the scientists and **tons** of supplies.

It took seven years for Bering's and Chirikov's groups to cross Siberia. They traveled mostly in flat-bottomed boats on the rivers. Bering's group spent a year in Tobolsk, where they built a ship and explored the Ob River. They continued to Yakutsk, where they spent four years. Yakutsk was only a small village and there were 20 many people in the expedition, so they had to build their own buildings. They also built boats and explored the Lena River. Then they moved on to Okhotsk on the eastern coast. It took two more years to build ships so that they could explore and map the east coast.

Bering made careful plans, but there were always problems. For example, they lost a lot of their food when one of the ships sank in a storm. But finally, their two ships started for North America. They had only one summer instead of two years for their explorations 30 because of the many problems and delays. And summers are short in the north.

There was more bad luck. There were storms, and the two ships lost contact, but at last the sailors on

connected the way parts of a place are positioned within it

to

had in it people in the military unit of measurement; in the U.S., 2,000 pounds = 1 ton



25

Bering's ship saw mountains a short distance across the sea. This **proved** that North America and Asia were two **separate** continents.

different

Their problems continued. Their water supply was low, but when the men went **ashore** in Alaska, they got water that was a little salty. Many of the men were sick from scurvy, a disease caused by the <u>lack</u> of **vitamin** C. When they drank the salty water, they became even sicker. Then they started dying, one after another.

not having enough

As the ship sailed south, back toward Okhotsk, it became lost in storms. Finally, a storm drove it onto a small island, and the men knew their ship could not sail again. They were in a place with no trees, but there were birds and animals for food, and **fresh** water to drink. However, it was too late for many of them. Men continued to die from scurvy, and on December 8, 1741, Bering died and was buried on the island that is now named for him. When spring came, the few remaining men were able to build a small ship from the wood in

By this time, the Russian government had lost interest in the North Pacific. Bering's reports were sent back to St. Petersburg and forgotten. <u>Decades</u> later, people realized that Bering was a great explorer. His expedition gathered important scientific information about the interior of Siberia, made maps of the eastern coast, and discovered a new part of North America. Today, we have the Bering Sea between Siberia and Alaska to remind us of the

the old one and leave the island.

leader of this great scientific expedition.

periods of ten years

make (us) remember

## **a** Vocabulary

| ,   |  |                 |                |                 | gather          |                |  |  |
|-----|--|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|--|--|
| p   | rove   | geography       | remind         | soldiers        | lack            | tons           |  |  |
| 1.  | . The dancers got in a circle and hands.           |                 |                |                 |                 |                |  |  |
| 2.  | . Did you study the of your country in school?     |                 |                |                 |                 |                |  |  |
| 3.  | . Mr. and Mrs. Baker drive to work in cars because |                 |                |                 |                 |                |  |  |
|     | they wor   | k in differen   | t places.      |                 |                 |                |  |  |
| 4.  | Please _   |                 | me to          | buy some br     | ead, or I migl  | nt forget.     |  |  |
| 5.  | In some  | restaurants, t  | the waiter's o | or waitress's t | ip is           |                |  |  |
|     | in the bil   | l. In others, y | ou leave it se | eparately.      |                 |                |  |  |
| 6.  | Two  |                 | equals 4       | ,000 U.S. pou   | ınds.           |                |  |  |
|     |  |                 |                |                 | use the chem    | istry          |  |  |
|     | professor  | r needs to ge   | t the equipme  | ent ready.      |                 |                |  |  |
| 8.  | He didn'   | t               | wh             | nat time it wa  | s, and he got   | to class late. |  |  |
|     |  |                 |                |                 | d follow orde   |                |  |  |
| 10. | Burke's e  | expedition fa   | iled partly be | cause of his    |                 | of             |  |  |
|     |  |                 | tralian outba  |                 |                 |                |  |  |
|     |  |                 |                |                 |                 |                |  |  |
| b   | Vocab  | ulary           |                |                 |                 |                |  |  |
|     |  |                 |                |                 | 1               | 1              |  |  |
| -   |  | •               | decade         |                 | includes        | •              |  |  |
|     |  |                 | skilled        | •               | vitamin         |                |  |  |
|     |  |                 |                | ŭ.              |                 | an university. |  |  |
|     |  |                 |                |                 |                 | d and not flat |  |  |
|     |  |                 |                |                 | pers and left t |                |  |  |
| 4.  | •  |                 |                |                 |                 | a problem on   |  |  |
|     | Ŭ  |                 |                |                 | t and vegetal   |                |  |  |
| 5.  |  |                 | •              | •               | he same islar   | ıd, but they   |  |  |
|     |  |                 | countries.     |                 |                 |                |  |  |
|     |  | •               |                | is              | -               |                |  |  |
|     |  |                 |                |                 | workers         |                |  |  |
| 8.  |  |                 | e water, the c | hildren walk    | ed              |                |  |  |
|     | and dried  | off.            |                |                 |                 |                |  |  |
|     | 0  |                 |                |                 |                 |                |  |  |

24



| 9. Peopl    | le cannot drink se                     | a water. They need  | water.           |
|-------------|--|---|------------------|
| 10. This b  | oook                                   | a table of contents and   | a map.           |
| C Vo        | cabulary Reviev                        | v: Definitions  |                  |
|             | words with their mumn in the correct i | leaning. Write the letter of the defin<br>blank.  | ition from the   |
| 1           | . hemisphere                           | a. not fight  |                  |
| 2           | . border                               | b. study  |                  |
| 3           | 3. remain                              | c. at last  |                  |
| 4           | l. get along                           | d. inside   |                  |
| 5           | . research                             | e. half of the earth  |                  |
| 6           | . interior                             | f. isolated   |                  |
| 7           | '. finally                             | g. line between two countries   |                  |
| 8           | . remote                               | h. writer for magazines   |                  |
| 9           | . turn into                            | i. become   |                  |
| 10          | . journalist                           | j. stay   |                  |
| d Tru       | e/False/Not Eno                        | ugh Information   |                  |
| information | n in the text for you                  | . <b>F</b> if it is false, and <b>NI</b> if there is no<br>to decide. Change the false sentend<br>alse. Do all of the <b>True/False</b> exerc | ces to make them |
| 1.          | Bering left St. Pe                     | tersburg ahead of Chirikov.   |                  |
| 2.          | It took them seve                      | en years to cross Siberia because   | they were        |
|             | traveling on hors                      | seback.   |                  |
| 3.          | Vitus Bering was                       | from St. Petersburg.  |                  |
| 4.          | Bering spent two                       | years exploring the east coast o  | f Siberia.       |
| *5.         | Bering's and Bur                       | ke's expeditions were similar.  |                  |
| 6.          | Bering's men fou                       | nd Eskimos in Alaska.   |                  |
| 7.          | Scurvy is caused                       | by a lack of vitamin C.   |                  |
| 8.          | Alaska belonged                        | to the United States at the time  | of               |
|             | Bering's expediti                      | on.   |                  |

RI



### Comprehension Questions

Paraphrase your answers. This means that you should answer the questions in your own words instead of using the exact words from the text.

- 1. Why was Bering's trip called a scientific expedition?
- 2. What did the men on the expedition do in Tobolsk?
- 3. Where did they stay longer, in Tobolsk or in Yakutsk?
- \*4. Why did the expedition have to build boats?
- 5. How did the two ships lose contact in the Pacific Ocean?
- 6. Why did the men on the island continue to die even when they had food and water?
- \*7. Is scurvy a problem on ships today? Why or why not?
- \*8. When Bering's expedition returned to St. Petersburg, were they welcomed as national heroes? Why or why not?



#### Main Idea

What is the main idea of paragraph 3 (lines 14–19)?

- a. It took seven years to cross Siberia.
- b. The expedition explored two rivers.
- c. The expedition built their own village in Yakutsk.



### Reading

How carefully should you read something? How fast should you read? The answer depends on what you are reading. Sometimes you need to read things slowly and carefully. At other times, you can read quickly, and at still other times, you can read at an average speed.

How would you read each thing below? Check  $(\checkmark)$  the box for slowly and carefully, at an average speed, or quickly.

|   | Slowly<br>and<br>Carefully | At an<br>Average<br>Speed | Quickly |
|---|----------------------------|---------------------------|---------|
| <ol> <li>A letter from your parents</li> <li>A letter from your bank</li> </ol> |                            |                           |         |

|  | and<br>Carefully | At an<br>Average<br>Speed | Quickly |
|--|------------------|---------------------------|---------|
| 3. The textbook for a difficult        |                  |                           |         |
| science class                          |                  |                           |         |
| 4. An exciting mystery story           |                  |                           |         |
| 5. The directions on an important exam |                  |                           |         |
| 6. A magazine article about an         |                  |                           |         |
| interesting person                     | continue la      |                           |         |

Some students like to read the whole text quickly to get the general idea. Others like to start at the beginning and read each sentence carefully. You can choose the best way for you to start reading a lesson. After that, you probably need to read the lesson two or three more times. When you come to a word you don't know, read the sentence again or even three times, to help you remember the word. It is never necessary to memorize sentences or paragraphs. That is not the way to study reading.

If the text is very difficult for you, read the first paragraph two or three times, then the second, and so on. Then read the whole text from beginning to end. Then you might want to read it all again.

You will probably want to read the complete text again after you have finished the whole lesson. Then test yourself on the vocabulary words that you underlined when you first read the text and learn the words you don't know.



### Word Forms: Verbs

Every sentence must have a verb. How do you know which form of a verb to use? There are often clues that tell you what form of the verb to use.

Put the right form of the verb in each blank. Explain why you chose each form.

- 1. Did Bering (lead) \_\_\_\_\_\_ an expedition across Siberia?
- 2. The expedition (leave) \_\_\_\_\_\_ St. Petersburg in 1733.
- 3. Bob is (study) \_\_\_\_\_\_ about explorers.
- 4. Nadia has (learn) \_\_\_\_\_\_ a lot of words this week.
- 5. Can you (help) \_\_\_\_\_ me with this exercise?
- 6. The teacher (give) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of homework every day.
- 7. Mr. Gordon was (sleep) \_\_\_\_\_\_ at midnight last night.
- 8. They are going to (travel) \_\_\_\_\_\_ in Europe next summer.

RA -

27



### Prepositions

The best way to learn how to use the right preposition is by practicing. Write the prepositions in these sentences from the text.

| 1.        | 1733, the most complete scientific expedition in    |  |  |  |  |
|-----------|---|--|--|--|--|
|           | history that time left St. Petersburg.              |  |  |  |  |
| 2.        | The scientists planned to report everything.        |  |  |  |  |
| 3.        | The expedition had to cross Siberia order           |  |  |  |  |
|           | reach the Pacific Ocean.                            |  |  |  |  |
| 4.        | Vitus Bering, the leader the whole expedition, left |  |  |  |  |
|           | St. Petersburg almost 600 people.                   |  |  |  |  |
| 5.        | They traveled mostly flat-bottomed boats            |  |  |  |  |
|           | the rivers.   |  |  |  |  |
| 6.        | They had only one summer instead two years          |  |  |  |  |
|           | their explorations because the                      |  |  |  |  |
|           | many problems and delays.                           |  |  |  |  |
| 7.        | At last, the sailors Bering's ship saw mountains a  |  |  |  |  |
|           | short distance the sea.                             |  |  |  |  |
| 8.        | They were a place no trees, but                     |  |  |  |  |
|           | there were birds and animals food.                  |  |  |  |  |
| 9.        | this time, the Russian government had lost interest |  |  |  |  |
|           | the North Pacific.                                  |  |  |  |  |
| 10.       | It discovered a new partNorth America.              |  |  |  |  |
| 200222886 |   |  |  |  |  |



### **Guided Writing**

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. You are one of the men who left the island in the spring of 1742. Tell what happened to you during the decade from 1733 to 1743. Give a few details.
- 2. The reading does not say what happened to the people on Chirikov's ship after the two ships lost contact. What do you think happened to them?



## Robert Scott: A Race to the South Pole

lesson

4



### Before You Read

- 1. What does this photograph tell you about the geography of the South Pole?
- 2. What would you need in order to explore the South Pole?
- 3. What problems might explorers in the South Pole have?



### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. Robert Scott led an expedition to Antarctica for a scientific **organization** called the Royal Geographical Society.
- 2. On earlier expeditions, when the dogs became **weak**, the men killed them for food.
- 3. Scott had the bad luck of having **extremely** bad weather. It was often −40°C (minus 40 degrees Celsius).
- 4. Scott and his men spent the winter near the ocean. They used sleds to carry supplies farther **inland**.
- 5. The men became **exhausted** and had difficulty pulling their sleds.

## 4 Robert Scott: A Race to the South Pole



The first person to reach the South Pole was Roald Amundsen, a Norwegian. Robert Scott, who was English, arrived at the South Pole a month after Amundsen and died on the return journey to his ship. Yet, strangely enough, Scott became a hero, but Amundsen did not.

Captain Robert Scott (1868–1912) was an officer in the English navy. From 1901 to 1904, he led an expedition to Antarctica for a British scientific **organization** called the Royal Geographical Society.

10 His group traveled farther south than anyone else had ever done. He gathered information on rocks, weather, and climate, and he made maps. When he returned to England, he was a national hero.

A few years later, Scott decided to organize another expedition. He said that he wanted to make a complete scientific study of Antarctica, but his real goal was to be the first person at the South Pole. He took three doctors, several scientists, and a number of other men with him.

Scott's group sailed on a ship named the *Terra Nova* in June 1910. When they reached Australia, they learned that Amundsen was also on his way to the Pole.

Amundsen and Scott were very different from each other, and they made very different plans. Amundsen planned everything very carefully. He took sleds and dog teams, as the great Arctic explorers did. Scott took ponies (small horses) and a few dogs, but he planned to have his men pull the sleds themselves for most of the trip. On earlier expeditions, as some dogs became <a href="weak">weak</a>, the men killed them for food for themselves and the other dogs. Amundsen did this too, and it helped him reach the Pole, but later people called him "dog eater." Scott would not eat his dogs, and this was one reason he died on this expedition.

There were other differences between the two
expeditions. Amundsen sailed 100 kilometers closer to the
Pole than Scott did. Scott also had the bad luck of having
extremely bad weather—days of <u>blizzards</u> and strong
winds. It was often -40°C (minus 40 degrees Celsius).

Scott and his men built a base camp near the ocean's

edge and spent the winter there. They used sleds and
ponies to carry a ton of supplies farther inland to a
place that they named the One Ton Depot. When spring
came, a few of the men started ahead of the others with
motorized sleds to leave supplies along the way.

However, after only a few days, the motorized sleds **broke down**, and the men had to pull them.

A few days later, Scott started for the South Pole with a few men. The whole journey was very difficult. Scott and his men either walked through deep snow or skied over ice and <u>uneven</u> ground. The climate was too difficult for the ponies, and they all died. There were frequent snowstorms. Sometimes the men couldn't leave their tents for several days because of blizzards.

not strong

storms with wind and snow

toward the interior

not flat



When Scott was 260 kilometers from the Pole, he sent all but four men back to the base camp. This was probably his most serious mistake. His tent was big enough for only four people, and he had only enough food and **fuel** for four. Somehow he had to **provide for** four people plus himself. Also, one man had left his skis 60 behind with some of the supplies. He had to walk in the snow, and this slowed down the whole group.

take care of

On January 17, 1912, Scott and his men reached the Pole, only to find a tent and the Norwegian flag. They were not the first people to reach the South Pole. They 65 had lost the race.

The next day, they started the 1,300-kilometer journey back to their base camp, pulling their heavy sleds full of supplies. The trip back was worse than the trip to the Pole. They became weak from hunger. At times, the 70 whiteness everywhere made them <u>blind</u>. Their fingers and toes began to freeze, and two of the men fell and injured themselves. They didn't have enough fuel to keep warm in their tent. They became exhausted and had more and more difficulty pulling their sleds.

sometimes not able to see

75 Finally, one man died. Then another became so weak that he knew he was endangering the lives of the others. One night, he left the tent and never returned. He walked out into the blizzard to die instead of holding back the other three.

causing danger to

Every day, Scott described the terrible journey in his diary. On March 21, the three remaining men were only twenty kilometers from the One Ton Depot, but another blizzard kept them in their tent. On March 29, they were still unable to leave their tent. On that day, Scott wrote 85 his last words in his diary.

A search party found the three **bodies** eight months later. They also found Scott's diary, excellent photographs of the expedition, and letters to take back to England. The search party left the frozen bodies 90 where they found them.

Today, the base camp building is still there. Inside are supplies, furniture, and the men's belongings. They have been left just the way they were when Scott's

80

expedition was there. New Zealand takes care of the building and its contents.

Robert Scott's name <u>lives on</u> in stories of his trip to Antarctica, the last part of the Earth that people explored. He was not the first to reach the South Pole, but he is remembered as one of the great heroes of exploration.

continues to live

## Vocabulary

|     | organization         | body               | weak                  | ınland            |
|-----|----------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
|     | edge                 | blizzard           | broke down            | exhausted         |
|     | blind                | extremely          | fuel                  | at times          |
| 1.  | A                    | is a storm w       | ith wind and snow.    |                   |
| 2.  | He put the glass to  | oo close to the    | of                    | the table, and it |
|     | fell off.            |                    |                       |                   |
| 3.  | A baby has more b    | oones in her       | than                  | an adult has.     |
|     | That's because ma    | ny of our bones g  | row together as we a  | age.              |
| 4.  | People who grow      | up near the sea ar | e often unhappy if t  | hey have to move  |
|     |                      |                    |                       |                   |
| 5.  | A                    | person canno       | ot see.               |                   |
| 6.  | It's very cold in no | orthern Canada, bi | ut at the North Pole  | it's              |
|     |                      | cold.              |                       |                   |
| 7.  | His car              | , and he           | had to walk five mi   | les to get home.  |
| 8.  | -                    | , Burke rode ho    | rseback. At other tin | nes, he walked.   |
| 9.  | People need          | to                 | cook and to heat the  | eir homes.        |
| 10. | The United Nation    | s is an important  | international         | 1 10 10 10        |



## Vocabulary

|     | weak                  | provided           | inland                | exhausted              |
|-----|-----------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
|     | broke down            | lives on           | uneven                | mistake                |
|     | belongings            | edge               | endangered            | bodies                 |
| 1.  | It was a              | to d               | rive into the city. T | There were so many     |
|     | cars on the road th   | at we were an l    | nour late for the m   | neeting.               |
| 2.  | When I am traveli     | ng, I keep my 🗕    |                       | _ in a suitcase.       |
| 3.  | If you don't eat for  | r several days, y  | ou will probably      | feel quite             |
|     | _                     |                    |                       |                        |
| 4.  | When I was a child    | d, my parents $\_$ |                       | _ me with everything   |
|     | I needed.             |                    |                       |                        |
| 5.  | The floor is so       |                    | _ that we can't pu    | ıt a table on it.      |
| 6.  | Ali stayed up all n   | ight to study fo   | r a test, and in the  | morning he             |
|     | was                   | <del></del>        |                       |                        |
| 7.  | She                   | her own            | life when she jum     | ped off the boat.      |
| 8.  | A famous person's     | name often         |                       | in books and articles. |
|     | Is the city of Bosto  |                    |                       | ?                      |
| 10. | The                   | of a knif          | e is very sharp.      |                        |
|     |                       |                    |                       |                        |
|     | Vocabulary Re         | view: Antonyı      | ms                    |                        |
| Mat | ch each word in the l | eft column with i  | ts opposite in the ri | ght column.            |
|     | 1. remote             | a. take ap         | part                  |                        |
|     | 2. leave              | b. exterio         | r                     |                        |
| -   | 3. get along          | c. close to        | o a city              |                        |
|     | 4. join               | d. fight           |                       |                        |
|     | 5. run away           | e. togeth          | er                    |                        |
|     | 6. include            | f. having          | į                     |                        |
| -   | 7. uneven             | g. leave o         | out                   |                        |
| _   | 8. separate           | h. remain          | L                     |                        |
|     | 9. interior           | i. come b          | ack                   |                        |
|     | 10. lacking           | j. smootl          | ı                     |                        |



### Multiple Choice

| 1.        | The first person to reach the South Pole was  |
|-----------|---|
|           | a. English  |
|           | b. French   |
|           | c. Norwegian  |
| 2.        | Scott was mainly interested in  |
|           | a. being the first person at the South Pole   |
|           | b. collecting information about the rocks in Antarctica   |
|           | c. learning about the weather and climate in Antarctica   |
| *3.       | Amundsen's expedition ate dogs because  |
|           | a. this is a custom in Norway   |
|           | b. it was a way for the men to have fresh meat  |
|           | c. there was no other food  |
| *4.       | Scott's expedition had to travel  |
|           | a. a shorter distance than Amundsen's   |
|           | b. the same distance as Amundsen's  |
|           | c. farther than Amundsen's  |
|           |   |
| *5.       | January is a month in Antarctica.   |
| *5.       | January is a month in Antarctica. a. summer   |
| *5.       |   |
| *5.       | a. summer   |
|           | a. summer b. fall   |
|           | <ul><li>a. summer</li><li>b. fall</li><li>c. winter</li></ul>   |
|           | <ul><li>a. summer</li><li>b. fall</li><li>c. winter</li><li>Scott's trip to the Pole was difficult. The trip back was</li></ul>   |
|           | <ul> <li>a. summer</li> <li>b. fall</li> <li>c. winter</li> <li>Scott's trip to the Pole was difficult. The trip back was</li> <li>a. more difficult</li> </ul>   |
| 6.        | <ul> <li>a. summer</li> <li>b. fall</li> <li>c. winter</li> <li>Scott's trip to the Pole was difficult. The trip back was</li> <li>a. more difficult</li> <li>b. about the same</li> </ul>  |
| 6.        | <ul> <li>a. summer</li> <li>b. fall</li> <li>c. winter</li> <li>Scott's trip to the Pole was difficult. The trip back was</li> <li>a. more difficult</li> <li>b. about the same</li> <li>c. much easier</li> <li>Scott and his men became exhausted because</li> <li>a. they didn't have enough fuel and could never get warm</li> </ul>  |
| 6.        | <ul> <li>a. summer</li> <li>b. fall</li> <li>c. winter</li> <li>Scott's trip to the Pole was difficult. The trip back was</li> <li>a. more difficult</li> <li>b. about the same</li> <li>c. much easier</li> <li>Scott and his men became exhausted because</li> <li>a. they didn't have enough fuel and could never get warm</li> <li>b. the sun on the snow blinded them</li> </ul>   |
| 6.        | <ul> <li>a. summer</li> <li>b. fall</li> <li>c. winter</li> <li>Scott's trip to the Pole was difficult. The trip back was</li> <li>a. more difficult</li> <li>b. about the same</li> <li>c. much easier</li> <li>Scott and his men became exhausted because</li> <li>a. they didn't have enough fuel and could never get warm</li> </ul>  |
| 6.<br>*7. | <ul> <li>a. summer</li> <li>b. fall</li> <li>c. winter</li> <li>Scott's trip to the Pole was difficult. The trip back was</li> <li>a. more difficult</li> <li>b. about the same</li> <li>c. much easier</li> <li>Scott and his men became exhausted because</li> <li>a. they didn't have enough fuel and could never get warm</li> <li>b. the sun on the snow blinded them</li> </ul>   |
| 6.<br>*7. | a. summer b. fall c. winter  Scott's trip to the Pole was difficult. The trip back was a. more difficult b. about the same c. much easier  Scott and his men became exhausted because, a. they didn't have enough fuel and could never get warm b. the sun on the snow blinded them c. they didn't have enough food and had to pull heavy sleds  We know the details about Scott's expedition because a. he sent reports back to the English government |
| 6.<br>*7. | a. summer b. fall c. winter Scott's trip to the Pole was difficult. The trip back was a. more difficult b. about the same c. much easier Scott and his men became exhausted because a. they didn't have enough fuel and could never get warm b. the sun on the snow blinded them c. they didn't have enough food and had to pull heavy sleds We know the details about Scott's expedition because   |



### Comprehension Questions

- \*1. Scott and Burke led expeditions in very different climates. What was similar about their expeditions?
- 2. Explain one serious mistake that Scott made.
- \*3. Why did Scott travel from his base camp to the Pole in January?
- 4. Why did one man walk out of the tent into the blizzard and not return?
- 5. Why was it difficult for the men to pull the sleds on the trip back from the Pole?
- 6. Why couldn't the three men travel the last twenty kilometers to the One Ton Depot?
- \*7. Was Scott a hero of exploration? Give a reason for your answer.



### Main Idea

What is the main idea of paragraph 7 (lines 39–46)?

- a. moving supplies inland
- b. getting ready to ski to the South Pole
- c. bad luck with motorized sleds



### Word Forms: Nouns

There are three parts of a sentence that always have a noun (or a pronoun): the subject, the object of the verb, and the object of a preposition.

| Subject        | Verb  | Object of the verb | Object of a preposition |
|----------------|-------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| David-Neel     | rode  | a <b>horse</b>     | to Tibet.               |
| The expedition | took  | food               | for the animals.        |
| A storm        | drove | the ship           | onto an island.         |

The subject is usually at the beginning of a sentence. The object of the verb is usually right after the verb. It answers the question "What?" The object of a preposition comes after the preposition. There might be adjectives and other words that describe these nouns:

David-Neel rode a large black horse to Tibet.

The large scientific **expedition** took a lot of **food** for the **animals**.

A bad **storm** drove the large sailing **ship** onto a small **island**.



Choose a word form from line 1 of the chart to use in sentence 1, and so on. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns. There are empty spaces on the chart because there are not four forms for every word.

|    | Verb     | Noun         | Adjective       | Adverb            |
|----|----------|--------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. | include  | inclusion    | inclusive       | inclusively       |
| 2. | separate | separation   | separate        | separately        |
| 3. | exhaust  | exhaustion   | exhausting      |                   |
| 4. | realize  | realization  |                 |                   |
| 5. | remind   | reminder     |                 |                   |
| 6. | inform   | information  | (un)informative | (un)informatively |
| 7. | organize | organization | organizational  | organizationally  |
| 8. | weaken   | weakness     | weak            | weakly            |

| 1. | Did you a description of your new friend when you         |
|----|---|
|    | wrote to your family?                                     |
| 2. | Write your two compositions on pieces of paper.           |
| 3. | He spent a long time in the desert. He suffered from heat |
|    |   |
| 4. | After Ms. Cook got home, she that she had forgotten       |
|    | to mail her letters.                                      |
| 5. | Ms. Barber put a on the refrigerator for her children     |
|    | to do their homework.                                     |
| 6. | Kumiko asked the teacher forabout the city buses.         |
|    | The teacher gave her a schedule that was very             |
| 7. | An in Melbourne chose Burke to lead an expedition         |
|    | across Australia.   |
| 8. | He felt before he started taking the medicine, and        |
|    | now the medicine has him even more.                       |

## **h** Two-Word Verbs

Learn these two-word verbs and then fill in the blanks with the right words. Use the correct verb form. Do all of the two-word verb exercises in the book this way.

|    | run out of     | =      | use up; not have any more                     |         |  |
|----|----------------|--------|---|---------|--|
|    | work out       | =      | exercise                                      |         |  |
|    | slow down      | =      | go more slowly                                |         |  |
|    | speed up       | =      | go faster                                     |         |  |
|    | live on        | =      | have enough money to pay for necessities with |         |  |
| 1. | Cars have to   | _      | when they enter a city. When the              | y leave |  |
|    | the city, they | can    | again.  |         |  |
| 2. | A lot of peop  | ole li | ke to go to a gymnasium and                   | This    |  |
|    | exercise is go | ood    | for them.                                     |         |  |
| 3. | The Lopez fa   | mil    | y adopted two children. Now they can't        |         |  |
|    |                |        | the money Mr. Lopez gets for working.         |         |  |
| 4. | Scott's men w  | vere   | hungry because they had almost                | _ food. |  |
|    |                |        |   |         |  |



### Finding the Reason

Here are some sentences about the explorers you have read about. Give a reason for each statement. The first one is done for you.

| Statement  | Reason                        |
|--|-------------------------------|
| Scott and his men were cold all the time.              | They didn't have enough fuel. |
| Scott went to the South Pole.                          |                               |
| David-Neel studied Tibetan in India.                   |                               |
| Bering's expedition lost a lot of its food.            |                               |
| Bering took scientists with him.                       | 4                             |
| Burke died on his expedition.                          |                               |
| Burke took camels on his expedition.                   |                               |
| The world knows about Burke's and Scott's expeditions. |                               |



Some words are often used together. For example, we often use the word "join" with the word "organization."

Read the following groups of words and then use the words printed in **bold** in the sentences below.

|    | join a <b>team</b> join an <b>organization</b> join a <b>club</b> | join an <b>expedition</b><br>join <b>hands</b><br>join <b>forces</b> |  |
|----|---|--|--|
| 1. | Walter joined the soccer  | because he is a very   |  |
|    | good player.  |  |  |
| 2. | To do this dance, everyone st                                     | ands in a circle and joins   |  |
| 3. | If you and I join more quickly.                                   | , we'll be able to do the work                                       |  |
| 4. | I'd like to join an   | that works for peace.  |  |
| 5. | You don't have to be a great                                      | singer to join the music   |  |
|    |   |  |  |

Guided Writing

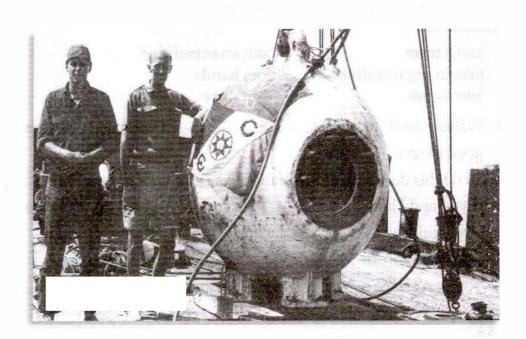
Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. You are going to lead a journey to the South Pole. What will you do differently from the way Scott did it?
- 2. You are in the tent with Scott in March 1912. Write a message in your diary.



# lesson 5

## Into the Deep: Ocean Exploration



### Before You Read

- 1. Would you like to explore the ocean floor? Why or why not?
- 2. Would you be willing to explore the ocean in the metal ball shown in the picture above? Why or why not?
- 3. What are some of the dangers of ocean exploration?



### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. Salt water covers roughly 71% of the Earth.
- 2. For centuries, people thought of the ocean as a travel **network**. It was a way to get from one place to another.
- 3. Sailors thought the ocean was a frightening place, full of dangerous **creatures**.
- 4. Early diving suits allowed people to **descend** 50 feet underwater.
- 5. Scientists discovered underwater mountains and more than 4,000 new species.

## 5 Into the Deep: Ocean Exploration



Salt water covers **roughly** 71% of the Earth's **surface**, and yet we have spent much more time exploring the Earth's mountains, forests, and deserts than studying its oceans. Scientists say that we know more about the moon than we know about our own oceans. And today, we continue to spend more money on space exploration

than on ocean exploration.

Why is it that we know so little about the oceans that surround us? Perhaps it is because, for centuries, people thought of the ocean as just a travel **network**. It was a way to get from one place to another. Most ocean travelers stayed close to the coast. Their goal was not to explore the ocean but <u>rather</u> to find new trade routes for the exchange of spices and other goods.

instead; more exactly

To early sailors, the ocean was also a frightening place, full of dangerous **creatures**. They thought that,



Lesson 5: Into the Deep: Ocean Exploration

deep below, the ocean was a dark and lifeless place. Believing this, people had little **incentive** to explore the ocean depths.

Ocean exploration was also **hampered** by the conditions below the surface. The tremendous **pressure** of the water would **crush** an unprotected diver. Water temperature on the ocean floor was not inviting either. Vents, or openings, on the ocean floor have

temperatures as high as 254°F (254 degrees Fahrenheit) or 123°C (123 degrees Celsius).

To explore below the surface of the ocean, humans needed special equipment. Early diving suits from the late eighteenth century and early nineteenth century were not very useful. One type enclosed the diver's body in a cylinder, making it difficult to move around. A later type of diving suit replaced the large cylinder with a heavy metal helmet. Air from above the surface traveled through a tube into the helmet. These early diving suits allowed people to descend fifty feet below the ocean surface for about an hour.

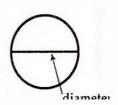
In 1872, the first ship equipped for ocean exploration set out on a four-year trip around the world. The ship had two laboratories, and it carried the most advanced scientific equipment of the time. Scientists on the ship tested the temperature and **density** of sea water. They gathered information about ocean currents and meteorology. They discovered an underwater mountain chain and more than 4,000 new **species**. The results of this expedition encouraged interest in exploring farther below the ocean surface. To do this, however, divers needed better equipment to protect them from the

Two divers, Charles Beebe and Otis Barton, designed one of the early submersibles for deep-sea diving. It was a large, hollow, steel ball less than five feet in diameter and weighing 5,000 pounds. A long heavy chain connected the steel ball to a ship above. In 1934, Beebe and Barton descended half a mile below the surface of the ocean in their submersible. From inside the steel ball, they were able to see extraordinary creatures. This was a great





empty; with nothing inside





pressure of water.

breakthrough for ocean exploration, for now people could see the underwater world with their own eyes.

Since Beebe and Barton's record-breaking descent,
improvements have been made in diving equipment,
allowing people to travel deeper for longer amounts of
time. Just twenty-six years after Beebe and Barton's
half-mile descent, Jacques Piccard and two others
traveled to a depth of 35,797 feet, or nearly seven miles,
in their own much improved submersible called the
Trieste. Even at this great depth, the explorers
discovered deep-sea life and new species.

The work of deep-sea explorers has given us a picture of life far below the surface. There is now greater understanding of the <u>diversity</u> of life in the ocean. We are now more aware of our dependence on healthy oceans. Still, less than one tenth of 1% of the deep ocean has been explored. Sylvia Earle, one of the leading **experts** on oceans, says, "We're in a new century and a new millennium, and most of the planet has yet to be seen."

variety





## Vocabulary

|     | descend  | crush                | hollow               | enclosed                |  |
|-----|--|----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|--|
|     | hamper   | expert               | diameter             | helmets                 |  |
|     | surface  | density              | network              | diversity               |  |
| 1.  | You can drink through a straw because it's inside. |                      |                      |                         |  |
| 2.  | You need to h                                      | nave a hard          | to w                 | rite on.                |  |
| 3.  | Do you think                                       | it's easier to go up | a mountain or to _   |                         |  |
|     | a mountain?  |                      |                      |                         |  |
| 4.  | It takes many                                      | years to become a    | n                    | on something.           |  |
| 5.  | A tennis ball                                      | has a larger         | than                 | a golf ball.            |  |
| 6.  | If you drop a                                      | heavy weight on yo   | ur foot, you might.  | it.                     |  |
| 7.  | The population                                     | on                   | is higher in cit     | ies than in the country |  |
| 8.  | Some countri                                       | es require motorcy   | clists to wear       |                         |  |
| 9.  | Ice can  | a sh                 | nip's movement thr   | ough water.             |  |
| 10. |  | is an impor          | rtant goal for many  | schools because there   |  |
|     | is much for us                                     | s to learn from peop | ple who are differe  | nt from us.             |  |
|     |  |                      |                      |                         |  |
|     | Vocabular  | ·у                   |                      |                         |  |
|     | **   | 1                    | .1                   | · · · · · V· · ·        |  |
|     | pressure   |                      | rather               |                         |  |
|     | species<br>descent                                 |                      | -                    |                         |  |
| 1   |  | 1                    |                      |                         |  |
|     |  | smooth               |                      |                         |  |
|     |  |                      | me of your arrival.  | Inat airea ma a         |  |
| ٥.  |  |                      | ine of your arrival. | just give file a        |  |
| 1   |  |                      | in a large           | s forced area           |  |
|     | -  |                      | in a large           |                         |  |
| Э.  | the mountains                                      |                      | eekend               | tnan                    |  |
| (   |  |                      |                      | (11-                    |  |
| 0.  |  |                      | y as an              | to get people           |  |
| 7   | to work harde                                      |                      | 1 1 11               | (                       |  |
| /.  |  |                      | •                    | of                      |  |
|     | 14.7 pounds p                                      | er square inch (1 kg | g per square centim  | eter).                  |  |
| 1   | 09   |                      |                      |                         |  |

| 8.   | Los Ang   | geles has a huge  | of high             | iways.                 |
|------|-----------|---|---------------------|------------------------|
| 9.   | Α         | has a flat circ   | cular top and botte | om and straight sides. |
| 10.  | There w   | as some kind of   | living              | in the old building.   |
|      |           | d it, but we never saw it.                                  |                     | Care to the            |
|      |           |   |                     |                        |
|      | Voca      | bulary Review   |                     |                        |
|      | beggar    | surrounded  | temperature         | civil war              |
|      | delayed   | in order to   | broke down          | ashore                 |
|      |           | organization  |                     |                        |
|      |           | iers tl   |                     |                        |
| 2.   | What do   | es the smell of an orange                                   |                     | _ you of?              |
| 3.   | The snow  | wstorm  | _ us for three hou  | urs because we had to  |
|      | drive ve  | ry slowly.  |                     |                        |
| 4.   | Α         | asks people   | for money or foo    | d.                     |
| 5.   | OPEC is   | the o   | f Petroleum Expo    | rting Countries.       |
| 6.   | I only kr | now she was in an accident                                  | . I don't know any  | of the                 |
|      |           |   |                     |                        |
| 7.   | There ha  | s been a  | in Somalia for      | several years.         |
|      |           | t groups of Somalis are figh                                |                     |                        |
| 8.   | Sometim   | es the summer   | in Anta             | rctica is 0°C.         |
| 9.   |           | get good grad   | es, you have to do  | your homework.         |
| 10.  | Α         | is ten years.   |                     |                        |
|      | 1         |   |                     |                        |
| d    | True/f    | alse/Not Enough Inforn                                      | nation              |                        |
| 2    | 1 M       | Tore than 50% of the Earth i                                | s under water       |                        |
|      |           | arly sailors were afraid to e                               |                     | surface of the ocean   |
|      |           | most parts of the ocean flo                                 |                     |                        |
|      |           | ne first diving suits were u                                |                     | perature is very not.  |
|      |           | ne deepest parts of the ocea                                |                     |                        |
|      |           | arly divers carried their ow                                |                     |                        |
|      |           | arry divers carried their ow<br>ne early submersibles had i |                     |                        |
|      |           | cques Piccard broke Beebe                                   |                     | a-sea diving record    |
|      | 0. ja     | eques i iccara broke beebe                                  | and parion's deep   | o-sea arving record.   |
|      |           |   |                     | an 45                  |
| Less | son 5: In | to the Deep: Ocean Explo                                    | ration              | _ 12n                  |

Lesson 5: Into the Deep: Ocean Exploration



### Comprehension Questions

- \*1. Why do you think we know more about the moon than about the Earth's oceans?
- 2. What hampered ocean exploration for centuries?
- 3. What is an ocean vent?
- \*4. What was important about the 1872 scientific trip around the world?
- 5. How did Charles Beebe and Otis Barton contribute to ocean exploration?
- 6. How far was Jacques Piccard able to descend in the ocean?
- 7. What have we learned from ocean exploration?
- \*8. How are the oceans important to humans?



#### Main Idea

What is the main idea of paragraph 3 (lines 15–19)?

- a. Early sailors didn't have a good reason to explore the oceans.
- b. Early sailors were afraid of the oceans.
- c. No one knew what was in the ocean.



### Scanning

When you want to find just one detail in a text, it is not necessary to read carefully. You **scan** instead; that is, you look as quickly as possible until you find the information.

Find these answers by scanning. Write short answers (not complete sentences). Write the number of the line where you found each answer.

| 1. | What is the temperature at vents in the ocean floor? |   |
|----|--|---|
| 2. | What did scientists discover in 1872?                |   |
| 3. | How much did Beebe's submersible weigh?              |   |
| 1. | What was the Trieste?                                | 7 |
| 5. | How deep did Jacques Piccard dive?                   |   |
|    |  |   |



6. Who is Sylvia Earle?



### Word Forms: Nouns

These are some common noun suffixes:

-er, -ar, -or: reminder, beggar, advisor

-ist: scientist

-ment: equipment

-ion, -sion, -tion, -ation: religion, decision, separation, realization

-y: discovery-ity: diversity-ness: loneliness

-ance: acceptance

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns. There are empty spaces on the chart because there are not four forms for every word.

|    | Verb      | Noun            | Adjective  | Adverb  |
|----|-----------|-----------------|------------|---------|
| 1. | trade     | trade<br>trader |            |         |
| 2. | enclose   | enclosure       | enclosed   |         |
| 3. | descend   | descent         |            |         |
| 4. |           | density         | dense      | densely |
| 5. | diversify | diversity       | diverse    |         |
| 6. | rough     | roughness       | rough      | roughly |
| 7. | surround  | surroundings    | surrounded |         |

| 1. | Japan and America             | with each other.                          |
|----|-------------------------------|---|
| 2. | A lake is an                  | body of water.                            |
| 3. | Beebe and Barton made a       | of half a mile.                           |
| 4. | Steel is a very               | material.                                 |
| 5. | There is great                | _ in the population of fish in the ocean. |
| 6. | Her father spoke              | to her because he was angry.              |
| 7  | It is not unusual for fish to | divers                                    |





Write the correct preposition in each blank.

| 1. | Salt water covers | roughly 71% | the Earth's surface. |
|----|-------------------|-------------|----------------------|
| 2  | The ecoan was a r | way to got  | o place to another   |

2. The ocean was a way to get \_\_\_\_\_ one place to another.

3. The temperature \_\_\_\_\_ the ocean floor varies from one place to another.

4. Diving suits \_\_\_\_\_ the late eighteenth century were difficult to move around in.

5. Air \_\_\_\_\_ above the surface traveled through a tube \_\_\_\_\_ the helmet.

6. Scientists tested the density \_\_\_\_\_ sea water.

7. A heavy chain connected the ball \_\_\_\_\_ a ship above.

8. Even \_\_\_\_\_ this great depth, the explorers discovered new life forms.



### Articles: The

Some geographical locations include the in the name.

1. Certain countries (Note that most countries do *not* include **the** in the name):

the United States of America, or the United States, or the U.S.A., or the U.S.

the United Arab Emirates

the United Kingdom

the Dominican Republic

the Netherlands

2. Major points on the Earth:

the North Pole

the South Pole

the equator

3. Plurals of islands, lakes, and mountains:

the Canary Islands

the Great Lakes

the Himalaya Mountains



| 4. Oceans, seas, rivers, canals, deserts:   |
|---|
| the Pacific Ocean the Bering Sea the Mississippi River the Suez Canal the Sahara Desert   |
| Continents, most geographical areas, most countries, and single islands, lakes and mountains do <i>not</i> have <b>the</b> in the name:   |
| Asia Western Europe (but the Middle East) England Bering Island Lake Geneva Mount Everest   |
| Write the in the blank if it is necessary.  |
| 1 Panama Canal joins Atlantic Ocean and   |
| Pacific Ocean.  |
| 2. This canal used to belong to United States.  |
| 3 Kuwait is near United Arab Emirates and   |
| Saudi Arabia.   |
| 4 Germany, Belgium, and Netherlands are in Europe.  |
| 5 Lake Geneva is in Switzerland.  |
| 6. Where are Madeira Islands?   |
| 7 Jordan is in Middle East.   |
| 8 Amazon River is in South America.   |
| <b>k</b> Guided Writing   |
| Write one of these two short compositions.  |
| 1. Do you think we should spend more money on space exploration or on ocean exploration? Give reasons to support your answer.  2. You are in Charles Booke's submersible in 1932. Describe what you see and |

- 2. You are in Charles Beebe's submersible in 1932. Describe what you see and feel while you are descending.



Lesson 5: Into the Deep: Ocean Exploration

## Video Highlights



### **Before You Watch**

1. Read the information in the box.

Throughout history, explorers have gone to remote places like the North Pole to discover new things. However, you don't need to go on a long and exciting trip to explore. The word *explore* can also mean to look at something near you very closely.

- 2. Try it out. Explore the room around you. What do you see, hear, and smell? Copy the chart to the right and fill in the missing information at the top of the list. Then complete the list with at least three observations.
- 3. Compare your list with a partner's. Did you observe some of the same things?
  Which things were different?





### As You Watch

Read the phrases and sentences below. They come from the video. What do you think the video is about?

- 1. "In the next thirty years, everything we want to find can be found."
- 2. "Including a 2,000-year-old Greece shipping vessel found off the coast of Cyprus."
- 3. "For fifty years, the Nauticos Corporation has scoured the ocean floor looking for sunken objects."
- 4. "Shipwrecks, marinas, even downed planes."



- 5. "Divers are really only good to about ten hundred feet."
- 6. "Worldwide, less than two companies do this kind of exploration."

Each sentence has a mistake. Watch the video and correct the sentences.



### After You Watch

| 1. Th | nese words come | from the vi | deo. Match | them to the | e correct |
|-------|-----------------|-------------|------------|-------------|-----------|
| d     | efinition.      |             |            |             |           |

| find   | drop      | drag        | shift    | identify       | control |
|--------|-----------|-------------|----------|----------------|---------|
|        | a. to pu  | ll with di  | fficulty |                |         |
|        | b. to cha | ange from   | one po   | sition to anot | her     |
|        | c. to co  | me across   |          |                |         |
|        | d. to rec | ognize so   | mething  | g or someone   |         |
|        | e. to cau | use to fall |          |                |         |
|        | f. to gu  | ide somet   | hing     |                |         |
| TO A T | 0         |             |          |                | 1 .1 .  |

- 2. The Nauticos Corporation uses a system to find things in the ocean. Write a word from Exercise 1 to complete the sentences.
  - a. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ sonar equipment in the ocean.
  - b. \_\_\_\_\_\_ equipment along the sea floor.
  - c. \_\_\_\_\_ target.
  - d. \_\_\_\_\_ to the control room.
  - e. \_\_\_\_\_ remote vehicle using joystick.
  - f. \_\_\_\_\_ object.
- 3. Describe the system Nauticos uses to find things in the ocean. Use *first*, *next*, *then*, *finally*.

Example: First, they drop sonar equipment in the ocean.

- 4. Discuss these questions with the class.
  - a. Would you like to be a deep-sea explorer? Why or why not?
  - b. If you were a deep-sea explorer, what would you like to find on the ocean floor?
  - c. Do you know of any famous shipwrecks on the ocean floor?
  - d. Have you or has someone you know ever found anything valuable on the beach?

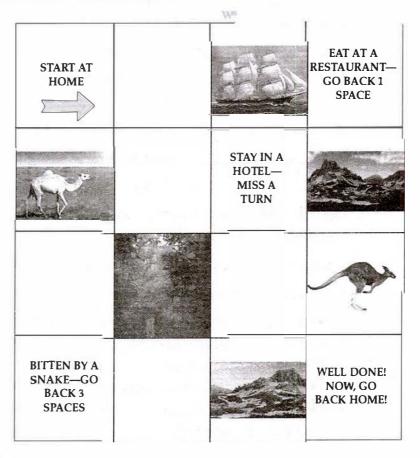


## **Activity Page**

#### **Adventure Trail**

You and your partner are two explorers who are going to travel all over the world. Like all great explorers, you will describe the different places you travel to. You will need a coin and two counters.

Put your counters on the Home square. Each person takes a turn tossing the coin. If the coin you toss lands heads up, move your counter forward one square. If it lands tails up, move your counter forward two squares. If your counter lands on a picture, describe the new place using the vocabulary words you know. Also, write two sentences about the place. Continue to toss the coin and move your counter until you reach the end (the Well Done! square). When you have reached the end, share your sentences with the class.



## **Dictionary Page**

### **Understanding Definitions**

g. look out

1. Draw lines to match the following two-word verbs with their meanings.

| a. get along  | return                       |
|---------------|------------------------------|
| b. run out    | be careful                   |
| c. work out   | do a series of exercises     |
| d. give up    | have a friendly relationship |
| e. get back   | not work at all              |
| f. break down | not have any left            |

2. You can learn new two-word verbs from your dictionary. For example, these verbs all begin with *get*. Read their definitions.

not try any more; surrender

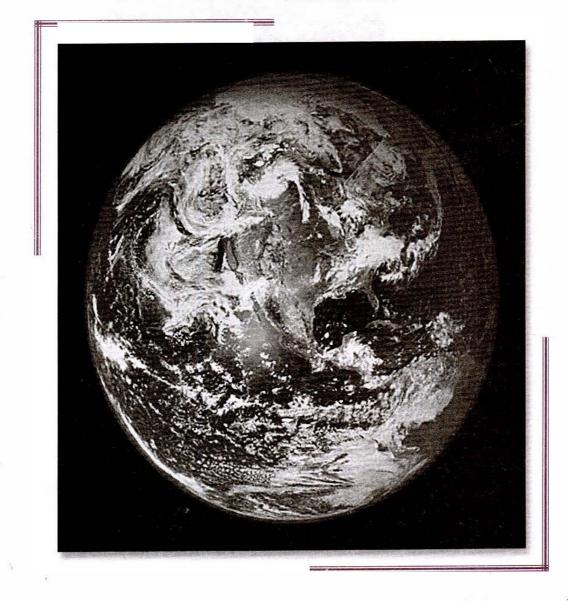
- **21** *phrasal v.* [T] to get ahead: to succeed, improve oneself: *She got a good job and is getting ahead in life.*
- **26** phrasal v. insep. [I] to get away (from s.o. or s.t.): a. to escape: The criminal got away from the police. b. to go on vacation: I got away for a week in the Caribbean.
- **30** phrasal v. insep. to get behind: a. [T] s.o. or s.t.: to support, help succeed: Many people got behind the politician and helped her win the election. b. [I] in s.t.: to be late with one's work, payments, etc.: He got behind in his rent payments and had to leave the apartment.
- 41 phrasal v. insep. to get on with s.t. or s.o.: a. [T] s.t.: to start doing or continue with s.t., often after interruption: Stop watching television and get on with your homework! b. [I;T] s.o.: to have a friendly relationship with: How do you get on with your boss?

Instagram:@IELTS\_Matt

| N  | ow write in the missing part of each verb.                   |
|----|--|
| a. | Donna is a friendly person. She gets                         |
|    | with everyone.   |
| b. | Try not to get in your homework.                             |
| c. | The explorers caught a rabbit for dinner, but it got         |
|    |  |
| d. | Pierre is trying really hard to get He's                     |
|    | got a good job, he's just bought a house, and he is starting |
|    | college next month.  |
| e. | Both of us were tired and needed a break. We finally got     |
|    | for a week at the beach.                                     |
| f. | She should stop wasting time and get                         |
|    | with her work.   |
| g. | I had an idea to increase sales. My boss got                 |
|    | the idea and sales increased 20%.                            |

Our responsibility is to protect the Earth for a million years.

—Robert Hunter, environmentalist



### lesson

## **World Population Growth**





### Before You Read

- 1. How many people live in your country? In your city?
- 2. Think about your city with twice as many people as it has now. How would things be different?
- 3. Do you want to have any children? How many?



### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. In the eighteenth century, the population of the world increased **gradually**. However, in the nineteenth century, the world's population grew very rapidly.
- 2. By the year 2050, researchers **predict** that the population of the world will be 9.1 billion.
- 3. Fresh water is **crucial** for health and food production.
- 4. What **effect** will 3 billion more people have on the air we breathe?
- 5. We don't know how long the world's supply of petroleum will last.

## 1 World Population Growth



For thousands of years, the population of the world increased **gradually**. Then, in the mid-nineteenth century, the world's population started to increase rapidly. In the 100 years between 1830 and 1930, the population of the world grew from 1 billion to 2 billion people. By 1960,

- world grew from 1 billion to 2 billion people. By 1960, just thirty years later, the world's population had hit 3 billion. Fifteen years later, the population reached 4 billion. Then, just eleven years later, there were 5 b illion people on Earth. In 1999, we passed the 6 billion mark.
- Today, the world's population grows by 76 million people every year. That is about 240,000 people every day. By the year 2050, researchers **predict** that the population of the world will be 9.1 billion.



Instagram:@IELTS\_Matters

Does the Earth have the <u>natural resources</u> to support this many people? Unfortunately, the answer to this question depends on information we don't have. For example, we don't know how people will choose to live in the future. We don't know what their <u>standard of living</u> will be. We also don't know what new technologies will be available in the future.

raw materials found in nature, such as trees, oil, and natural gas

the overall quality of life that people experience

We do know that the Earth's natural resources are limited. Fresh water, for example, is crucial for health and food production. However, more than 97% of the water on Earth is salt water, which is poisonous to both people and crops. Only 3% of the water on Earth is fresh water,

and crops. Only 3% of the Water on Earth is fresh water and three quarters of that fresh water is frozen at the North and South Poles. Today, the **demand** for fresh water is greater than the supply in roughly eighty countries around the world. By 2025, scientists predict

that forty-eight countries will have <u>chronic</u> shortages of water. At present, desalinization, or the removal of salt from salt water, is not a solution to the shortage of fresh water. It takes a lot of energy to remove the salt from ocean water, and that makes the desalinization process

35 very expensive.

The amount of land we can use to produce food is also limited. Today, roughly 11% of the land on Earth can be used for crops, while another 20% is available for raising animals. Each year, however, more of this land is

- 40 lost as cities grow and roads stretch across the land. In addition, overcultivation has already damaged an amount of farmland equal to the size of the United States and Canada combined. It is possible to increase the amount of farmland, but only a little. Some
- farmland can be more productive if people start using different farming methods, but this will not increase worldwide production very much.

Clean air is another important natural resource.
However, it too is **threatened** by the growing
population. The average person today puts about
1.1 metric tons of carbon into the atmosphere each year.
Most of it comes from burning fossil fuels—gasoline,

long-lasting



coal, oil, wood, and natural gas. Scientists say that the amount of carbon dioxide in the air is already 18% higher than it was in 1960. What effect would 3 billion more people have on the air we breathe?

While we have many different sources of <a href="commercial">commercial</a> energy, there is a limited supply of many of them. Today, most of the world's commercial energy comes from three nonrenewable energy resources—petroleum, natural gas, and coal. Three quarters of this commercial energy is used by <a href="developed">developed</a> countries. As the standard of living goes up in other countries, so will the demand for energy. Some scientists predict that if everyone in the world lived like an American, our fossil fuel supply would last for just fifteen more years.

Clearly, the number of people that the Earth can support in the future will depend on many things. The Earth may be able to support 9 billion people, but what will their standard of living be? And what effect will all these people have on the environment?

sold in the marketplace

economically strong

# Vocabulary

|        | and the same of th | -                   |                   |                   |               |
|--------|--|---------------------|-------------------|-------------------|---------------|
|        |  |                     | natural resou     | •                 | nds on        |
|        | 0.   | available<br>demand |                   | stand<br>comb     | ard of living |
| 1      |  |                     |                   |                   | irica         |
|        | There is a   |                     |                   |                   |               |
| 2.     | When automo  |                     | ne                | , very            |               |
|        | few people co  | •                   |                   |                   |               |
|        | If you have a.   |                     | -                 | •                 |               |
|        | Some countrie  | _                   | -                 | -                 |               |
| 5.     | We don't yet h   | ave the             | t                 | o supply the wo   | orld with     |
|        | energy withou  |                     |                   |                   |               |
| 6.     | People are   |                     | learning tha      | t we must take    | care of       |
|        | the environme  | nt.                 |                   |                   |               |
| 7.     | When there is  | an increase in t    | he                | for oil           | , the price   |
|        | usually goes u   | -                   |                   |                   |               |
| 8.     | The health of t  | he Earth            |                   | how we use its    |               |
|        | natural resour   | ces.                |                   |                   |               |
| 9.     | Researchers  |                     | that the use      | e of coal will in | crease more   |
|        | than 50% over  | the next two de     | ecades.           |                   |               |
| 10.    | It's   | for e               | veryone to have   | e a supply of cle | ean water.    |
|        |  |                     |                   |                   |               |
| b      | <b>V</b> ocabulary   |                     |                   |                   |               |
|        | threat   | already             | effect            | source            |               |
|        | commercial   |                     |                   | nonrenewabl       | e             |
|        | combine  | limit               | prediction        |                   |               |
| 1.     | The population   | is growing fas      | ster than the foo | d supply in ma    | ny            |
|        |  | countries           |                   | 11 7              | ,             |
| 2.     | In our town, al  | l of the busines    | ses are in the _  |                   | district.     |
|        | Wind is a renev  |                     |                   |                   |               |
|        | It's only 8 p.m.   |                     |                   |                   |               |
|        | If you use the h   |                     |                   |                   | onger.        |
|        | Overpopulation   |                     |                   |                   | -             |
| $\cap$ |  |                     |                   |                   |               |

| 7.  | O                   |   | nergy would have    | a positive              |    |
|-----|---------------------|---|---------------------|-------------------------|----|
|     | on the environment. |   |                     |                         |    |
|     |                     | If you salt and water, you get salty water. |                     |                         |    |
| 9.  | The                 | of li                                       | ving is higher in s | ome countries than      |    |
|     | in others.          |   |                     |                         |    |
| 10. | The Internet is a   | good  | of in               | nformation about        |    |
|     | population grow     | vth.  |                     |                         |    |
|     | Vocabulary          | Review                                      |                     |                         |    |
|     | skill               | rather                                      | mistake             | blind                   |    |
|     |                     |   | surrounded          | include                 |    |
|     |                     |   | species             |                         |    |
| 1.  | Mr. Rossi was _     |   | after driving       | for ten hours.          |    |
| 2.  | For my research     | paper, I read                               | many books writte   | en by                   |    |
|     |                     | on air po                                   | ellution.           |                         |    |
| 3.  | Typing is a very    | useful                                      | for                 | students. They can lear | rn |
|     | by practicing.      |   |                     |                         |    |
| 4.  | I do not use the    | sun to heat m                               | y house but         | oil.                    |    |
| 5.  | Alice injured her   | eyes in an ac                               | cident. Now she is  | s,                      |    |
| 6.  | There was a terri   | ible  | in Spa              | in in the 1930s. Almost |    |
|     | a million people    | died.                                       |                     |                         |    |
| 7.  | The demand for      | food and wat                                | er is already great | er than the             |    |
|     |                     |   |                     |                         |    |
| 8.  | Overpopulation      | is a threat to r                            | nany animal         |                         |    |
| 9.  | The children        |   | their teacher,      | who was giving          |    |
|     | away candy.         |   |                     |                         |    |
| 10. | Many people thi     | nk it's a                                   | to                  | depend on oil for       |    |
|     | our energy.         |   |                     |                         |    |
|     |                     |   |                     |                         |    |



### Multiple Choice

For the rest of the book, there will be no asterisks (\*) before any multiple-choice items. You will have to decide if the answer is in one of the sentences or if you have to figure it out yourself. In this exercise, use the text and the charts to answer the questions.

| World's Largest Urban Areas in Population (2004) |            |
|--|------------|
| -  | 21 224 700 |
| 1. Tokyo/Yokohama, Japan                         | 31,224,700 |
| 2. New York City, U.S.A.                         | 30,107,600 |
| 3. Mexico City, Mexico                           | 21,503,700 |
| 4. Seoul, South Korea                            | 20,156,000 |
| 5. Sao Paolo, Brazil                             | 19,090,200 |
| 6. Jakarta, Indonesia                            | 18,206,700 |
| 7. Osaka/Kobe/Kyoto, Japan                       | 17,608,500 |
| 8. Bombay, India                                 | 17,340,900 |
| 9. Los Angeles, U.S.A.                           | 16,710,400 |
| 10. Cairo, Egypt                                 | 15,863,300 |

| World's Largest Countilles |               |  |  |  |
|----------------------------|---------------|--|--|--|
| in Population (2004)       |               |  |  |  |
| 1. China                   | 1,298,847,624 |  |  |  |
| 2. India                   | 1,065,070,607 |  |  |  |
| 3. U.S.A.                  | 293,027,571   |  |  |  |
| 4. Indonesia               | 238,452,952   |  |  |  |
| 5. Brazil                  | 184,101,109   |  |  |  |
| 6. Pakistan                | 159,196,336   |  |  |  |
| 7. Russia                  | 143,782,338   |  |  |  |
| 8. Bangladesh              | 141,340,476   |  |  |  |
| 9. Nigeria                 | 137,253,133   |  |  |  |
| 10. Japan                  | 127,333,002   |  |  |  |
|                            |               |  |  |  |

World's Largest Countries

- 1. There were \_\_\_\_\_ as many people in the world in 1930 as there were in 1830.
  - a. twice
  - b. three times
  - c. four times
- 2. Between 1960 and 2000, the population of the world \_\_\_\_\_
  - a. doubled
  - b. grew three times larger
  - c. increased by more than a billion people
- 3. About \_\_\_\_\_ of the Earth's land can be used for raising food.
  - a. 11%
  - b. 20%
  - c. 30%
- 4. The wind and the sun are \_\_\_\_\_
  - a. nonrenewable energy resources
  - b. renewable energy resources
  - c. limited energy resources



| 5.  | The amount of in the air has increased since 1960.  a. fossil fuels  b. carbon dioxide   |
|-----|--|
|     | c. natural resources   |
| 6.  | The developed countries use commercial energy than the   |
|     | developing countries.  a. a little more  b. two times more  c. a lot more  |
| 7.  | Some scientists predict that, by the year 2025,  a. the population will reach 9 billion  b. some countries will have serious problems getting fresh water  c. 11% of our farmland will be gone |
| 8.  | has the urban area with the largest population.  |
|     | <ul><li>a. Brazil</li><li>b. Nigeria</li><li>c. Japan</li></ul>  |
| 9.  | In, the population of the whole world was about the same as the  |
|     | population of China today. a. 1750 b. 1850 c. 1950   |
| 10. | has almost the same population as Cairo and Los Angeles  |
|     | together. a. Mexico City b. Tokyo c. Seoul   |



## Comprehension Questions

For the rest of the book, there will be no asterisks (\*) before any questions. You will have to decide if the answer is in one of the sentences or if you have to figure it out yourself. Use the text and charts to answer these questions.

- 1. How has the population of the world changed in the past 2000 years?
- 2. Why is the standard of living different in different countries?
- 3. Can the amount of farmland on Earth be increased?
- 4. Why can't we use most of the Earth's water?



- 5. What is a nonrenewable energy resource?
- 6. Why is the demand for energy increasing everywhere in the world?
- 7. Is it better to have a smaller population with a higher standard of living for everyone or to have a larger population with a lower standard of living?
- 8. How many people can the Earth support?
- 9. Which European country is among the world's largest?
- 10. Which urban area of the world has the largest population?
- 11. Do you think your country has too many people? Give a reason for your answer.



#### Main Idea

What is the main idea of this reading? Write it in a sentence.



#### Two-Word Verbs

Learn these two-word verbs and then fill in the blanks with the right words. Use the correct verb form.

cut down = cut and remove (as in cut down a tree)

figure out = find (the answer)

go up = increase

hang up = end a telephone conversation make up = think of (a new story or idea)

- 1. Mr. Hasegawa \_\_\_\_\_ funny stories to tell his children.
- 2. The big old tree in our front yard is dead. We have to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 3. I can't \_\_\_\_\_ the answer to this math problem.
- 4. When Tom finished talking to his friend on the phone, he said "Goodbye" and \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 5. When there is a shortage of something, the price usually





## Irregular Verbs

Memorize these verb forms. Then put the right form of a verb in each of the blanks.

|       | Simple<br>freeze<br>forbid<br>sink<br>shoot  | Past<br>froze<br>forbade<br>sank<br>shot | Past Participle frozen forbidden sunk shot |
|-------|--|--|--|
| 1.    | The law  | dri                                      | ving over 40 kilometers an hour on side    |
|       | streets in the city  | y. You can drive 6                       | 0 or 75 on main streets.                   |
| 2.    | A small sailboat   | hit a rock, and w                        | ithin an hour it had                       |
| 3.    | The second secon | food is quick                            | k and easy to cook.                        |
| 4.    | Bob went hunting   | ng and                                   | a bear.                                    |
| 28889 | <b>36</b> 2  |  |  |



### Word Forms: Adjectives

Adjectives describe nouns. They are usually before the noun. They are sometimes after the verb be.

These are difficult questions.

These questions are difficult.

Participles are often used as adjectives. The third form of the verb is the past participle—for example, **talked** or **frozen**. The **-ing** form of the verb is the present participle—for example, **talking**.

The world is overpopulated.

The **growing** population is causing environmental problems.



Choose a word from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

|    | Verb     | Noun        | Adjective           | Adverb                |
|----|----------|-------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. | predict  | prediction  | predictable         | predictably           |
| 2. | shorten  | shortage    | short               | shortly               |
| 3. | depend   | dependence  | dependent           | dependently           |
| 4. | limit    | limit       | limited             |                       |
| 5. | populate | population  | populous            |                       |
| 6. | care     | care        | careful<br>careless | carefully carelessly  |
| 7. | use      | use         | useful<br>useless   | usefully<br>uselessly |
| 8. | combine  | combination | combined            |                       |

| 1. | Anne likes to read books with a ending. She doesn't    |
|----|--|
|    | like surprises.  |
| 2. | The secretary was of paper and had to order some.      |
| 3. | Many countries are on oil for fuel.                    |
| 4. | The speed in my area is 30 miles per hour.             |
| 5. | What is the of your country?                           |
| 6. | If you are when you write your composition, you will   |
|    | probably get a good grade. If you write, you may fail. |
| 7. | A sled is if you live in Kuwait.                       |
| 3. | They use a of resources for energy in their house—the  |
|    | sun, oil, and wind power.                              |



Put an article in each blank if one is necessary.
 For thousands of years, \_\_\_\_\_ population of \_\_\_\_ world increased gradually.
 By year 2050, researchers predict that \_\_\_\_ population of \_\_\_\_ world will be 9.1 billion.
 We don't know how \_\_\_\_ people will choose to live in the future.
 More than 97% of \_\_\_\_ water on Earth is \_\_\_\_ salt water.
 Today, \_\_\_\_ demand for \_\_\_\_ fresh water is greater than \_\_\_\_ supply.
 It is possible to increase \_\_\_\_ amount of farmland, but only \_\_\_\_ little.
 Overcultivation has already damaged an amount of farmland equal to the size of \_\_\_\_ United States and \_\_\_\_ Canada combined.



## **Guided Writing**

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. Describe what your country is doing to help the world population problem. If it isn't doing anything, what do you think it should do? Why?
- 2. Describe life in your city ten years from now if twice as many people live there.

8. We have many different sources of \_\_\_\_\_ commercial energy.



# **Changes in the Family**

lesson

2



### Before You Read

- 1. How many people are in your family?
- 2. Where do the people in your family live?
- 3. How is your life different from your grandparents' lives?

### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. In some families, grandparents, parents, children, uncles, and other relatives all live together.
- 2. In some families, mothers stay at home to take care of the children.
- 3. Since 1970, there has been a 200% increase in the number of single-parent families. The number has increased **tremendously**.
- 4. **Industrialization** made it possible for many young people to move to the city to work in factories.

# 2 Changes in the Family



Barbara Todisco, 35, and her husband, Ted, 37, have two children. They live together in what is called a **nuclear** family. A nuclear family **consists of** two generations—two parents and their children.

is made up of

- Esme Tanguay, 43, lives with her daughter, Maria, 11. They live together in a single-parent family. In the United States, a quarter of American children now **grow up** in single-parent families.
- Juan Diego, 45, of Miami, Florida, has two children from his first marriage. His second wife, Nancy, has two children from her first marriage. Juan and Nancy also have a child together. Juan and Nancy and the five children live together in what is now called a blended family.
- 15 Carl Jacobs, 32, lives with his wife, their two children, and his wife's mother and father. They are an **extended** family. Extended families consist of more than



one set of parents and children. The most common type of extended family consists of a married couple and one or more of their married children all living together in one household. An extended family might also consist of two brothers and their wives and children. A large extended family might consist of grandparents, parents, children, uncles, and other relatives.

For centuries, the extended family was the most common type of family. One benefit of living in an extended family is that there are more people to share the work. This was especially important in societies where mothers had to work outside the home, raising crops or gathering food. In an extended family, mothers could work outside the home while other family members were available to **take care of** the children and do other household **tasks**.

In the United States, one of the biggest changes in families in the last century has been a decrease in the number of extended families. One very important reason for this decrease was **industrialization**. The growth of industry made it possible for many young people to leave their families and move to the city to

work in factories. By the 1920s, a <u>majority</u> of children in the United States were no longer living in extended families. Instead, they were living in families with a father who went to work and a mother who stayed at home.

As long as a family could <u>afford</u> to have the mother stay at home, this type of family was able to survive. For many families, however, this was not **financially** possible. As the cost of living rose in the United States, more and more women needed to work outside the

50 home. At the same time, an <u>emphasis</u> on equality for men and women opened the door to new job <u>opportunities</u> for women. Before long, single-parent families, blended families, and even extended families were becoming more common.

Since 1970, the number of single-parent families in the United States has increased **tremendously**. Today, there are roughly 90 million single-parent families with more than half but not all

have enough money (for something)

special importance (placed on)

chances for advancement



children under the age of 18. That is a 200% increase since 1970. Nearly 99% of these single-parent families are headed by women. Many sociologists have studied single-parent families to find out why they are increasing in number. The fact that it is now easier to get a divorce in the United States does not fully explain this increase. In many countries, divorce rates stabilized in the 1980s but the number of single-parent families continued to increase. In order to get a better explanation for the increase in the number of single-parent families, it is also necessary to look at why people aren't remarrying and why there are more births outside of marriage today. These two factors are also contributing to the rise in the number of single-parent families.

Boutros Boutros-Ghali, the former Secretary-General of the United Nations, once said that families "are at the leading edge of change and are adapting to serious challenges, often under very demanding conditions." The truth is that families have always had to change and adapt, but somehow the family has always survived.

## Vocabula<u>ry</u>

|          | consisted of  |  | industrial   | industry                                   |
|----------|---|--|--|--|
|          |   | extended   | nuclear  | sociologists                               |
| 1.       | The   | family is  | larger than the  |  |
|          |   | family.  |  |  |
| 2.       |   | 10,011   | he children while sh   | ne was in                                  |
|          | the hospital.   |  | at proper we cook and  | 10007                                      |
| 3.       |   |  | at 1   |  |
|          | •   |  | A party mark to  |  |
|          |   |  | soup, and sandwich   |  |
|          |   |  | couple   |  |
| ó.       | Japan is an   | n  | ation. It has heavy a  | nd   |
|          | light   |  |  |  |
| 7.       | He  | in Canada  | a, but he spent his ac   | dult life in France.                       |
| 3.       | Their parents   | نئد حالات  | the importance of s  | tudying and                                |
|          | learning, and no  | w all of the childre   | en are professors.   |  |
| ).       | He had so many  | job  | after graduat  | te school that he had                      |
|          | trouble deciding  | what to do.  |  |  |
|          | Houble declaing   | Trade to do.   |  |  |
|          | irouble deciding  | What to do   |  |  |
| E        | Vocabulary  |  |  |  |
| L        |   |  | household  | stable                                     |
| t        | Vocabulary  | =<br>afford  |  | stable<br>opportunity                      |
| t        | Vocabulary divorced   | afford<br>sociologist  | task   | opportunity                                |
| 1.       | Vocabulary divorced majority financial  | afford<br>sociologist<br>couple  | task   | opportunity relatives                      |
| 1.       | Vocabulary divorced majority financial Maria is from M  | afford<br>sociologist<br>couple<br>fexico, but she has   | task<br>tremendous   | opportunity relatives in                   |
|          | Vocabulary  divorced majority financial  Maria is from M California. Thre   | afford sociologist couple fexico, but she has  | task tremendous several there with their fam   | opportunity relatives in                   |
| 2.       | Vocabulary  divorced majority financial  Maria is from M California. Thre   | afford sociologist couple fexico, but she has eof her aunts live s married for ten y   | task tremendous several there with their fam rears before he got _   | opportunity relatives in nilies.           |
| 2.       | Vocabulary  divorced majority financial  Maria is from M California. Thre Her brother was   | afford sociologist couple fexico, but she has e of her aunts live s married for ten y  | task tremendous several there with their fam rears before he got _   | opportunity relatives in milies.           |
| 2.       | Vocabulary  divorced majority financial  Maria is from M California. Thre Her brother was   | afford sociologist couple  flexico, but she has e of her aunts live s married for ten y tudents in my soci                                     | task tremendous several there with their fam rears before he got _ tiology class. The                        | opportunity relatives in milies.           |
| 2.       | divorced majority financial  Maria is from Maria is from Maria. Three  Her brother was students are from international students.                      | afford sociologist couple  fexico, but she has e of her aunts live s married for ten y tudents in my soci m the United State                   | task tremendous several there with their fam rears before he got _ tiology class. The es, but there are also | opportunity relatives in in of five        |
| 2.<br>3. | Vocabulary  divorced majority financial  Maria is from M California. Thre Her brother was There are fifty so students are from international students | afford sociologist couple  fexico, but she has e of her aunts live s married for ten y tudents in my soci m the United State udents studies ho | task tremendous several there with their fam rears before he got _ tiology class. The                        | opportunity relatives in in nilies of five |

| 6. The car I saw costs \$10  | 0,000, but I can to pay only                   |
|------------------------------|--|
| \$7,000. I guess I'll have   | e to find a cheaper car.                       |
| 7. I need a                  | of dollars, not just one.                      |
| 8. My father grew up in a    | of twelve people.                              |
| 9. My least favorite house   | ehold is washing dishes.                       |
| 10. In my opinion, a house   | e with eight bedrooms is a                     |
| h                            |  |
|                              |  |
| C Vocabulary Review          | w: Definitions                                 |
| Match each word with its def | inition.                                       |
| 1. blizzard                  | a. instead                                     |
| 2. inland                    | b. living things                               |
| 3. rather                    | c. worse                                       |
| 4. belongings                | d. stop running or working                     |
| 5. remain                    | e. things you own                              |
| 6. creatures                 | f. bad snow and wind storm                     |
| 7. expert                    | g. make a guess                                |
| 8. break down                | h. stay in one place                           |
| 9. depend on                 | i. someone who knows a lot about a subject     |
| 10. predict                  | j. away from the ocean                         |
|                              | k. need  |
|                              | l. better than                                 |
| d True/False/Not Enc         | ough Information                               |
| ilue/laise/lvot Liic         | ough information                               |
| 1. A blended family          | y consists of one parent.                      |
| 2. A nuclear family          | is smaller than an extended family.            |
| 3. Parents and child         | dren are from the same generation.             |
| 4. The family has c          | hanged because of industrialization.           |
| <b>0</b> 1                   | amily and a blended family both have more than |
| one generation.              |  |
|                              | st children in the United States lived in      |
| blended families             | 5.   |

Instagram:@IELTS\_Matters

- 7. The best way to raise children is in a nuclear family.
  8. There is just one reason why the number of single-parent families has increased.
  9. As countries industrialize, family size decreases.
- 7,

### Comprehension Questions

- 1. What is a nuclear family?
- 2. What is a blended family?
- 3. What is one benefit of living in an extended family?
- 4. What is one effect that industrialization has had on families?
- 5. How are families changing in your country?



### Main Idea

What is the main idea of paragraph 5 (lines 25–33)? Write it in a sentence.



## Word Forms: Adjectives

These are some common adjective suffixes: -able, -al, -ful, -ive, -less, -like, -ous, -t, -y.

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

|    | Verb          | Noun                       | Adjective                  | Adverb           |
|----|---------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|------------------|
| 1. | socialize     | society                    | social                     | socially         |
| 2. | industrialize | industry industrialization | industrial                 | industrially     |
| 3. | marry         | marriage                   | marriageable               |                  |
| 4. | afford        |                            | affordable                 | affordably       |
| 5. | control       | control                    | (un)controllable           | (un)controllably |
| 6. | limit         | limit                      | limitless<br>(un)limited   |                  |
| 7. | separate      | separation                 | separable<br>(in)separable |                  |
| 8. | depend        | dependence                 | dependable                 | dependably       |

| 1. | Industrialization causes serious             | problems in  |
|----|--|--|
|    | a country.                                   |  |
| 2. | Many countries are trying to                 | their economies.   |
| 3. | When his daughter reached a                  | age, he sent her to live   |
|    | with his sister.                             |  |
| 4. | For many people, a car is not                | ii_, lieup) idgratud   |
| 5. | If you drive too fast, you might lose        | of the car. The  |
|    | car will become                              |  |
| 6. | The supply of petroleum in the Earth is not  | ALCOHOL RESIDENCE TO A STATE OF THE STATE OF |
| 7. | The two children are                         | They start crying when they  |
|    | can't be together.                           |  |
| 8. | The last person who worked here was not _    | He said  |
|    | that he would do things, but he didn't alway | ys do them.  |





Put articles in the blanks if they are necessary.

| 1. | They live together in | single-parent family. |
|----|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 2  | In the United States  | quarter of American   |

2. In the United States, \_\_\_\_\_ quarter of American children grow up in \_\_\_\_\_ single-parent families.

| 3. | Juan | and Nancy | also have | child |
|----|------|-----------|-----------|-------|
|----|------|-----------|-----------|-------|

| 4. | For centuries, | extended family was | most common type |
|----|----------------|---------------------|------------------|
|    | of family.     |                     |                  |

| 5. | In | extended family, | mothers could work outside |
|----|----|------------------|----------------------------|
|    |    | home.            |                            |

| 6. | One of   | biggest changes in _ | families in _ | last century       |
|----|----------|----------------------|---------------|--------------------|
|    | has been | decrease in          | number of     | extended families. |



### Summarizing

A **summary** of a paragraph gives all the important information in the paragraph. It is usually just one sentence. A summary of a complete reading text has a few sentences.

Choose the best summary sentence for each paragraph.

- 1. Paragraph 4 (lines 15-24)
  - a. Carl Jacobs lives in an extended family that consists of his wife and children and his wife's parents.
  - b. There are different kinds of extended families, but they all consist of more than one set of parents and children.
  - c. Extended families consist of more than one set of parents and children.
- 2. Paragraph 6 (lines 34-44)
  - a. One of the biggest changes in American families has been the decrease in the number of extended families.
  - b. By the 1920s, most American children lived in nuclear families.
  - c. The growth of industry in the United States caused a decrease in the number of extended families and an increase in the number of nuclear families.



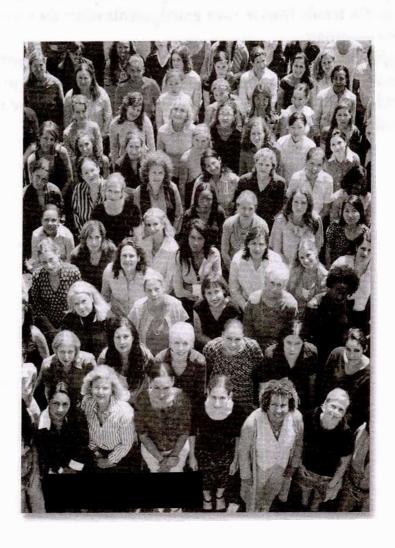
Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. In your country, how are the family lives of you and your friends different from the family lives of your grandparents when they were young? Give examples.
- 2. Right now, do you live in a nuclear, blended, single-parent, or extended family? What do you think your family life will be like in the future? What kind of family will your children and grandchildren live in? Why do you think this?

## **Women and Change**

lesson

3



### Before You Read

- 1. In your country, do girls and boys get the same education?
- 2. Who does most of the work in your house?
- 3. How many women work in the government of your country? What do they do?

#### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. Many reports have been **published** on the rights of women.
- 2. The reports have a lot of good news, but they also have some **negative** news.
- Women do most of the domestic work—for example, cooking and washing clothes.
- 4. Women do nearly 66% of the world's work.
- 5. Many programs help women, **as well as** men, improve their standard of living.

# 3 Women and Change



"Women hold up half the sky." This is an old Chinese saying. However, research suggests that perhaps women do more than their share of "holding up the sky."

- Many reports have been **published** on the conditions and rights of women **throughout** the world. Some of the news in the reports is very **positive**. For example, 90% of all countries have **official** organizations to improve the lives of women. More than
- half of the countries have laws to protect the rights of women, and 90% of all countries have passed laws to give women equal pay for equal work. WHO (World Health Organization) and UNICEF (United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund) have
- programs to improve the health of people in developing countries, **especially** women and children. Birth-control methods are now available to more than half of the women in the world. Almost half of the children in



school now are girls, a big change from the past,

because in many countries education was not available to girls.

The reports also have **negative** news. Although most countries have official organizations to improve women's lives, many of these organizations don't do
25 anything. Women make up 50% of the world's population, but they do **nearly** 66% of the world's work. They do most of the **domestic** work—for example, cooking and washing clothes. Millions of women also work outside the home. They have become 50% of the **workforce** in many countries. For this work, however, they earn about half as much as men, and, **of course**, they earn nothing for their domestic work.

Reports also show that there are still very few women in high government positions. In fact, only about 15% of the positions in government are held by women. In addition, more than half of the people who can't read and write are women. Being illiterate doesn't mean people are not intelligent. However, not being able to read and write does make it more difficult for people to change their lives.

In developing countries, where three quarters of the world's population lives, women produce more than half of the food. In Africa, 80% of all **agricultural** work is done by women. In some parts of Africa, this is a typical day for a woman. At 4:45 a.m., she gets up, washes, and eats. It takes her a half hour to walk to the **fields**, and she works there until 3:00 p.m. She collects firewood and gets home at 4:00. She spends the next hour and a half preparing food to cook. Then she collects water for another hour. From 6:30 to 8:30, she cooks. After dinner, she spends an hour washing the dishes and her children.

There are many programs to help people improve their agricultural skills. However, for years, these programs provided money and training for men but not for women. Now this is changing. International organizations and programs are helping women, as well as men, improve their agricultural production.

Finally, around 9:30 p.m., she goes to bed.

almost

total number of people working

naturally; clearly

jobs; places

farming



fields

Clearly, women's lives have changed in many ways.

Some of these changes have been positive, giving many women legal rights and better living conditions. Ideally, in the future, more and more women will benefit from new opportunities, good education, and legal rights.

|      | Vocabulary                             |                                |                                      |                     |
|------|--|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------|
| 6000 | published<br>agriculture<br>throughout | official<br>illiterate<br>pass | especially<br>as well as<br>positive | domestic            |
| 1.   | What book compar                       | ıy                             | this book                            | ?                   |
| 2.   | I like all kinds of fr                 | uit, but I                     | like                                 | e bananas.          |
| 3.   | Α                                      | worker doe                     | s a family's house                   | ework.              |
| 4.   | There are many pro                     | ograms available               | to help                              | people              |
|      | learn to read and w                    | rite.                          |                                      |                     |
| 5.   | Getting a new job v                    | vas the most                   |                                      | thing that happened |
|      | to her last year.                      |                                |                                      |                     |
| 6.   | Overpopulation aff                     | ects the environ               | ment                                 | the standard        |
|      | of living.                             |                                |                                      |                     |
| 7.   | In some countries,                     | school students i              | nust                                 | an exam             |
|      | before they graduat                    | te.                            |                                      |                     |
| 8.   | If you have \$9.80, y                  | ou have                        | ten                                  | dollars.            |

| b         | Vocabulary |
|-----------|------------|
| 8000000 m |            |

|     | negative              | of course<br>field<br>passed | agricultural<br>position<br>nearly | throughout<br>workforce<br>domestic |
|-----|-----------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1.  | •                     |                              | •                                  | learn about farming.                |
|     |                       |                              |                                    | she                                 |
|     | wouldn't let him.     |                              | ,                                  |                                     |
| 3.  |                       | round the                    | S                                  | o that the cattle couldn't          |
|     | leave the farm.       |                              | Links                              |                                     |
| 4.  |                       | everal low-pa                | ying jobs, he finally              | got a good                          |
|     |                       | _                            | ., 6 , = = = , = = = = = .         | 900 11 900 11                       |
| 5.  |                       |                              | ountry is made up o                | f both men and women.               |
|     |                       |                              | _                                  | history.                            |
|     |                       |                              | his teacher said son               | ·                                   |
| , . |                       |                              |                                    |                                     |
| 8   |                       |                              | 0                                  | United Nations.                     |
| 0.  |                       |                              | organization or the                | onica i variono.                    |
| C   | Vocabulary R          | eview: Defir                 | nitions                            |                                     |
| Μι  | atch the words with t | heir meaning.                |                                    |                                     |
| _   | 1. relative           | a. a per                     | son who studies so                 | ciety                               |
|     | 2. divorced           | -                            | me an adult                        | makes and detail                    |
|     | 3. populatio          | n c. smal                    | ljob                               |                                     |
|     | 4. task               |                              | enough money to b                  |                                     |
|     | 5. sociologis         |                              | mely tired                         |                                     |
|     | 6. majority           | f. perso                     | •                                  |                                     |
|     | 7. grow up            | •                            | per of people in an a              | irea                                |
|     | 8. afford             | h. way                       | 1 1                                |                                     |
|     | 9. descend            | •                            | than half                          |                                     |
|     | 10. exhausted         |                              | y member                           |                                     |
|     |                       | ,                            | nger married                       |                                     |
|     |                       | l go de                      |                                    |                                     |



Use the text and this chart to answer the questions below.

| age of each                             | Percentage of Total Work<br>Hours Put In by |            |  |
|---|---|------------|--|
|   | Men   | Women      |  |
| Cuts down forests, prepares fields      | 95  | 5          |  |
| Turns the soil                          | <b>7</b> 0                                  | 30         |  |
| Plants seeds and cuttings               | 50  | 50         |  |
| Hoes and weeds                          | 30  | <b>7</b> 0 |  |
| Gathers crops                           | 40  | 60         |  |
| Carries crops home                      | 20  | 80         |  |
| Stores crops                            | 20  | 80         |  |
| Processes food crops                    | 10  | 90         |  |
| Sells the extra crops                   | 40  | 60         |  |
| Carries water and fuel                  | 10  | 90         |  |
| Cares for domestic animals              | 50  | 50         |  |
| Hunts                                   | 90  | 10         |  |
| Feeds and cares for the family          | 5   | 95         |  |
| Source: UN Handbook on Women in Africa. |   |            |  |

- 1. According to the chart, women in Africa do about \_\_\_\_\_ of the cooking.
  - a. 50%
  - b. 70%
  - c. 90%
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_ of the world's countries have official organizations to improve the life of women.
  - a. All but 90%
  - b. Half
  - c. All but 10%
- 3. The average woman earns \_\_\_\_\_ the average man.
  - a. more than
  - b. the same as
  - c. less than



| 4. | in the world are literate.                                   |
|----|--|
|    | a. More men than women                                       |
|    | b. More women than men                                       |
|    | c. About the same number of women and men                    |
| 5. | In Africa, of the farmwork is done by men.                   |
|    | a. 80%   |
|    | b. 50%   |
|    | c. 20%   |
| 6. | An illiterate person   |
|    | a. can't think   |
|    | b. can't speak   |
|    | c. can't read  |
|    |  |
| 7. | In an African village, men do about half of the              |
|    | a. weeding   |
|    | b. planting  |
|    | c. hunting   |
| 3. | In Africa, village carry most of the crops, water, and fuel. |
|    | a. men   |



b. womenc. children

### Comprehension Questions

- 1. What does the saying "Women hold up half the sky" mean?
- 2. How many countries have laws to protect the rights of women?
- 3. Why are more women than men illiterate?
- 4. Give a reason why some women work more hours than men.
- 5. What organizations have programs to improve the health of women?



### Main Idea

What is the main idea of this reading? Write one or two sentences.



Scan the reading to find answers to these questions. Write a short answer and the number of the line where you found the answer.

| 1. | What percentage of jobs are held by women?                     |
|----|--|
| 2. | What percentage of positions in government are held by women?  |
| 3. | What percentage of countries have laws about equal pay?        |
| 4. | In Africa, what percentage of the farmwork do women do?        |
| 5. | What percentage of women have birth-control methods available? |
| 6. | What percentage of children in school are boys?                |

# **h** Articles

Put articles in the blanks if they are necessary.

- 1. This is \_\_\_\_\_ old Chinese saying.
- 2. Some of \_\_\_\_\_ news in \_\_\_\_ reports is very positive.
- 3. For example, 90% of all \_\_\_\_\_ countries have \_\_\_\_ official organizations to improve \_\_\_\_ lives of \_\_\_\_ women.
- 4. Almost half of \_\_\_\_\_ children in \_\_\_\_ school now are \_\_\_\_ girls.
- 5. \_\_\_\_\_ millions of women also work outside \_\_\_\_\_ home.
- 6. More than half of \_\_\_\_\_ people who can't read and write are \_\_\_\_ women.
- 7. In \_\_\_\_\_ Africa, 80% of all agricultural work is done by \_\_\_\_ women.



There is always a noun after an article. There might be an adjective before the noun.

Women do most of the housework.

An illiterate person cannot read or write.

Choose a word from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

|    | Verb     | Noun                     | Adjective      | Adverb         |
|----|----------|--------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. | publish  | publication<br>publisher | published      |                |
| 2. | pass     | passage                  | Bert Bredinsal |                |
| 3. |          | (il)literacy             | (il)literate   |                |
| 4. | position | position                 |                |                |
| 5. |          | agriculture              | agricultural   | agriculturally |
| 6. |          | official                 | official       | officially     |

| 1. | Newsweek is a popular              |                                     |
|----|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 2. | The government                     | a law requiring equal pay for equal |
|    | work. The of this                  | law made many people happy.         |
| 3. | is not a problem i                 | n Japan.                            |
| 4. | For the photograph, he             | himself between his                 |
|    | two daughters.                     |                                     |
| 5. | Very few people work in            | in northern Russia. It is not       |
|    | an area.                           |                                     |
| 6. | My brother is a government         | He says you can't get               |
|    | into a government building without | papers.                             |



## **Connecting Words**

Use the word but to connect a sentence from the second column with one from the first column. Use a comma before but. Write the new sentences on a separate piece of paper.

- 1. Some of the news in the reports is positive.
- 2. Half of the world's children are girls.
- 3. Many women work outside the home.
- 4. Rich countries have the fewest people.
- 5. It is possible to increase the amount of farmland.
- 6. There is enough water in the world.

- a. Only 41% go to school.
- b. They use the most natural resources.
- c. It can be increased only a little.
- d. Some of it is bad.
- e. Most of it is salt water.
- f. Their husbands don't help them with the housework.



## **Guided Writing**

Write one of these two short compositions.

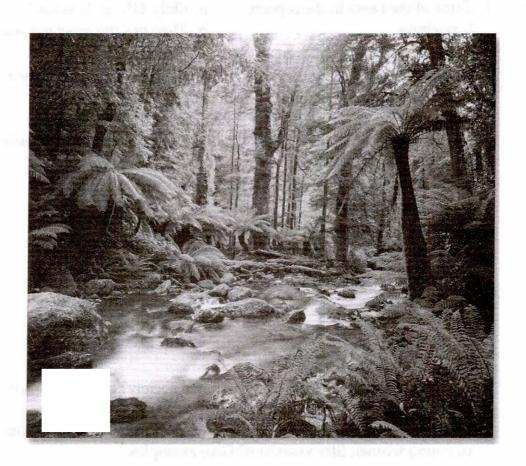
- 1. Is it easy to change the life of women in a society? Give reasons for your answer.
- 2. In your country, is the life of a young woman today different from the lives of young women fifty years ago? Give examples.



## **Rain Forests**

lesson

4



### **Before You Read**

- 1. Do you have forests in your country? Describe them.
- 2. Compare the number of trees in your country today with the number of trees there 100 years ago. Do you think there are more trees, fewer trees, or about the same number?
- 3. What do you already know about tropical rain forests?



#### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. People cut down a quarter of the trees to make fields for their cattle. They cut down the **remaining** trees for fuel or to sell the wood or to start farms.
- 2. The world needs more food, and it seems like a good idea to clear the rain forests and use the land for agriculture.
- 3. One **surprising** thing about rain forests is that the land under them is not very good. Most people think it is, but it isn't.

# 4 Rain Forests



Tropical rain forests are found in the Amazon region of South America, as well as in Central America, Africa, and Asia. Almost half of the rain forests are in Brazil.

Tropical rain forests are very old, thick forests where it rains more than 1.8 meters per year. The oldest rain forest in the world is in Sarawak. It is 10 million years old, and it has 2,500 different kinds of trees.

In rain forests, there are huge trees forty-five meters high. The lowest <u>branches</u> of the trees are about ten meters above the ground. Below the trees, there is another **level** of plants that consists of many kinds of smaller trees, shrubs, and flowers.

Each level of the rain forest is its own world. The lower level is protected by the trees above. The temperature and **humidity** (the amount of water, or **moisture**, in the air) stay about the same in the lower level. There is not much sunlight. In the upper level, the sun, rain, and wind change the temperature and humidity often.

An amazing animal world lives in the upper level. There are monkeys, members of the cat family, birds, area





20

and insects <u>such as</u> bees, butterflies, and many kinds of flies. Other animals that usually live on the ground also live here—mice, ants, and even earthworms.

for example

This upper level of the forest is thick with plant life because the trees are covered with other plants. Most plants get <u>nutrients</u> from the ground **through** their **roots**. These plants in the upper level take their nutrients from the trees they live on and from the other plants that die there.

food

The animals in the rain forest need "streets" so that they can move along the upper level without going down to the ground. They make <u>paths</u> along the branches of the trees. A researcher found a path that stretched for eighteen meters in one tree. One kind of tiny ant makes a path only three millimeters wide.

narrow ways for walking

Unfortunately, humans are still destroying the Earth's tropical rain forests. Nearly 80,000 square kilometers are being destroyed every year. About a quarter of the **destruction** comes from people cutting down trees for fuel. Another quarter is to make grassland for their cattle. The remaining trees are cut down to sell the wood or to start farms.

The population in cities all over the world is growing, and more and more wood is needed to build huge new buildings. For example, 5,000 trees from the Sarawak rain forest in Malaysia were used to build just one tall building. If people continue cutting down that many trees in the Sarawak rain forest, all the trees could be gone in eight years.

The world needs more food, and it seems like a good idea to clear the rain forests and use the land for agriculture. Many people think that the land under these huge, thick forests must be very rich in nutrients, but it isn't. This is another surprising thing about rain forests.

Most of the land in tropical rain forests is very poor. The plants are able to live because of all the dead **leaves** and other plant parts that fall to the ground. This **carpet** of dead plants provides nutrients for the living plants. When the land is cleared for agriculture, there are

floor covering

not any more

no longer any plants to die and provide nutrients for living plants. The cycle is broken. Agriculture is unsuccessful because the land cannot support it. Trees cannot grow again because the carpet of dead plants is gone. The land becomes empty and useless.

Why should it matter to a businessperson, a farmer, or a student that people are destroying rain forests thousands of kilometers away? For anyone who takes medicine, wears running shoes, or uses envelopes, the destruction of the rain forest does matter. Rain forests cover less than 6% of the Earth's area, but they have 100,000 kinds of plants, probably half of all the kinds of plants on the Earth. Three fourths of all known kinds of plants and animals call the rain forest their home. Twenty percent of our different kinds of medicine come from rain forests. The glue on an envelope and in shoes comes from tropical plants. Rain forests provide materials for hundreds of other products.

Rain forests are also very important to the world's climate. The Amazon rain forest alone receives about 30 to 40% of the total rainfall on the Earth and produces about the same percentage of the world's **oxygen.** Many scientists believe that the decreasing size of rain forests will affect the climate on the Earth, making it uncomfortable or even dangerous for life.

The destruction of our rain forests is an international problem. One country—or even a few countries—cannot solve the problem alone. The nations of the world must work together to find a solution before it is too late.

## **a** Vocabulary

| through  | path   | branch             | such as                          |  |  |
|--|--|--------------------|----------------------------------|--|--|
| destruction  | •  |                    | nutrients                        |  |  |
| humidity   | remain   | level              | roots                            |  |  |
| 1. The northern  | destable   | of Canada          | a is very cold.                  |  |  |
|  | He plans to in Brazil for several years and then                           |                    |                                  |  |  |
| return to Engl   |  |                    | grafter from the contribution of |  |  |
| 0  | 3. When students do well in their English classes, they move up to the nex |                    |                                  |  |  |
| 4. Masako left th  | e university to  | go back to Japas   | n. She will                      |  |  |
|  | study E  | nglish in an Am    | erican classroom.                |  |  |
| 5. The   | of r   | nost plants are b  | pelow the ground.                |  |  |
|  |  |                    | along the river in               |  |  |
| the evening.   |  |                    | to makerel sel remana            |  |  |
| 7. A   | is par   | t of a tree.       |                                  |  |  |
| 8. All living thin                                       |  |                    |                                  |  |  |
| 9. If you want to  |  |                    |                                  |  |  |
| •  | the Unit   | Part of the second |                                  |  |  |
|  |  |                    | _ are both high in Malaysia.     |  |  |
|  |  |                    | 8                                |  |  |
| <b>b</b> Vocabulary                                      | У  |                    |                                  |  |  |
| cleared  | surprise   | nutrient           | s path                           |  |  |
| successful   | matter   | moistur            | e destruction                    |  |  |
| oxygen (O)   | such as  | carpet             | leaves                           |  |  |
| 1. After dinner, they the dishes from the table.         |  |                    |                                  |  |  |
| 2. The living room has a wood floor, but the bedroom has |  |                    |                                  |  |  |
| a  |  |                    |                                  |  |  |
| 3. The   | of th  | ne rain forests sh | ould be a concern                |  |  |
| for everyone.  |  |                    |                                  |  |  |
|  |  | to me if we sta    | y at home or go to a movie.      |  |  |

| 5  |                    | _ is necessary for life  | ria politici del de la comparte del comparte del comparte de la comparte del la comparte de la c |
|--|--------------------|--------------------------|--|
| 6. Peo   | ple in Latin Ame   | erican countries         | Ecuador, Peru,   |
| and  | Venezuela spea     | k Spanish.               |  |
| 7. In c  | old climates, tree | es drop their            | in the winter.   |
| 8. He's  | s a                | businessper              | rson because he works very hard.   |
| 9. It w  | as a               | to see him               | at the party because he rarely   |
| goes   | out.               |                          |  |
| 10. The  | amount of          | in th                    | ne air is called humidity.   |
|  |                    |                          | Comprehension Greetle  |
| V  | ocabulary Rev      | iew: Synonyms            |  |
| Match th   | e words that mean  | n the same.              |  |
|  | 1. gradually       |                          |  |
|  | 2. nearly          |                          |  |
|  | 3. such as         | •                        |  |
|  | 4. extremely       | d. not old               |  |
|  | 5. enclose         | e. about                 |  |
|  | 6. surprising      | f. for example           |  |
|  | 7. fresh           | g. unexpected            |  |
|  | 8. turn into       | h. become                |  |
|  | 9. humid           | i. moist                 |  |
| 1  | 0. roughly         | j. surround              |  |
| DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPERTY OF |                    |                          |  |
| d Tr   | ue/False/Not E     | nough Information        | and from all prestations of more has   |
|  | 1. Some rain for   | rests are not in the tro | opics.   |
|  |                    |                          | in the upper level of a rain forest  |
|  | than in the lo     | · ·                      | sebt niem III  |
|  | 3. In the upper    | level, some plants su    | pport the life of other plants.  |
|  | 10, 11             | trients through their    |  |
|  | O                  |                          | re kilometers of tropical rain   |
|  | •                  | year so that they can    | •  |

6. The land in tropical rain forests is rich.
7. Tropical rain forest land can support forests although it cannot support agriculture.
8. Material from rain forests is used to make cassette tapes.
9. Earthworms make paths on the branches of trees in rain forests.
10. There are rain forests in Brazil.
11. Rain forests have 100,000 kinds of plants.



### Comprehension Questions

- 1. How is the weather in the lower level of a rain forest different from the weather in the upper level?
- 2. Why is it amazing to find mice and earthworms in the upper level?
- 3. Where do most plants in the upper level get their nutrients?
- 4. Why do people cut down trees in rain forests?
- 5. Where do plants in the lower level get their nutrients?
- 6. What happens to the land when the trees are cut down?
- 7. Why are rain forests important to the world's climate?
- 8. What are some other reasons that rain forests are important to all of us?



### **Paraphrasing**

Use your own words to say the ideas found in these sentences from the text. It is not necessary to use the same number of sentences. You may use more.

- 1. The plants in the upper level take their nutrients from the trees they live on and from the other plants that die there.
- 2. When the land is cleared for agriculture, there are no longer any plants to die and provide nutrients for living plants.



#### Main Idea

- 1. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 3 (lines 13-19)?
- 2. Write your own sentence for the main idea of paragraph 13 (lines 87–90).





#### Cause and Effect

Match the causes in the first column with the effects in the second column. Write the letter of the effect by the number of the cause.

#### Cause

- \_\_ 1. There are fewer rain forests.
- \_ 2. The trees are all cut down.
- \_ 3. A carpet of dead plants provides nutrients.
- 4. Animals want to travel in the upper level.
- \_\_ 5. The lower level is protected by the upper level.

#### **Effect**

- a. The weather doesn't change much in the lower level.
- b. They make paths along branches.
- c. This may affect the climate on the Earth.
- d. Tropical plants can live on poor land.
- e. Tropical land becomes useless.



#### Word Forms

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

|    | Verb     | Noun        | Adjective   | Adverb        |
|----|----------|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. |          | tropics     | tropical    |               |
| 2. | humidify | humidity    | humid       |               |
| 3. | moisten  | moisture    | moist       |               |
| 4. | empty    | emptiness   | empty       |               |
| 5. | destroy  | destruction | destructive | destructively |
| 6. | surprise | surprise    | surprising  | surprisingly  |
| 7. | remain   | remainder   | remaining   |               |
| 8. | succeed  | success     | successful  | successfully  |

| 1. | Indonesia | is | in | the |  |
|----|-----------|----|----|-----|--|
|----|-----------|----|----|-----|--|

2. It's hot and \_\_\_\_\_\_ today.

| 3. | It's rainy today, and n                 | ny skin is   |                |              |
|----|---|--|----------------|--------------|
| 4. | After the children left                 | , there was an   | in             | the house.   |
| 5. | War is                                  | It takes human life  | and            |              |
|    | cities, villages, and ag                | ricultural land.   |                |              |
| 6. | The beauty of the fore                  | est mo   | e. It is a     |              |
|    | 1                                       | peautiful place.   |                |              |
| 7. | We ate half of the sala                 | d and put the  | in             |              |
|    | the refrigerator.                       |  |                |              |
| 8. | She                                     | flew the plane across ti   | he country. A  | After her    |
|    | t                                       | rip, her friends had a big p   | oarty.         |              |
|    |   |  |                |              |
|    | Noun Substitute                         | S  |                |              |
| r. | 1 |  | 1              |              |
|    |   | n the reading. Decide what it<br>word, but it might be a subs          |                | •            |
| из | 1                                       | 0  | -              |              |
|    | _                                       | s is a typical day for a villa<br>and eats. ( <b>She</b> is a substitu | ~              |              |
| 1. | page 90 line 28 their                   |  | te for a viria | ge woman.)   |
|    | page 90 line 29 they                    |  |                |              |
|    | page 90 line 30 there                   |  |                |              |
|    |   | vi.k. sulmihk  |                |              |
|    | page 90 line 55 it                      | a Spring   |                |              |
|    | page 90 line 55 this                    |  |                |              |
|    | page 91 line 64 it                      |  |                |              |
|    | page 91 line 72 they                    |  |                |              |
|    | 7                                       |  |                |              |
| k  | Articles                                |  |                |              |
|    | , il cicles                             |  |                |              |
| Pu | t an article in each blank              | if it is necessary.  |                |              |
| 1. | Belowtrees, the                         | ere is another level of plan   | ts.            |              |
| 2. | Each level of ra                        | in forest is its own world.  |                |              |
| 3. | temperature ar                          | nd humidity (amount of wa  | ater, or mois  | ture, in the |
|    | air) stay about                         | same.  |                |              |
|    |   |  |                |              |

| 4. | 4. In upper level, sun, ran                 | n, and wind change ———     |
|----|---|----------------------------|
|    | temperature and humidity often.             |                            |
| 5. | 5. Most plants get nutrients from           | ground through their roots |
| 6. | 6. These plants in upper level take their r | utrients from trees        |
|    | they live on and from other plants that     | die there.                 |
| 7. | 7 researcher found path that stre           | tched for eighteen         |
|    | meters in one tree.                         |                            |
| 8. | 8. One kind of pat makes pat                | h only three               |
|    | millimeters wide.                           |                            |
|    |   |                            |



## **Guided Writing**

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. Why are rain forests important?
- 2. You are walking through a rain forest. Describe what you see, hear, smell, and touch.

# The Garbage Project

lesson

5



#### Before You Read

- 1. The photograph on this page shows a landfill. Based on the photograph, how would you define a landfill?
- 2. Where do people in your country put old cars, old newspapers, and old clothes?
- 3. What do you do with food that is no longer fresh?

#### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- Archaeologists study buried houses, broken objects, and other old things to learn about ancient societies.
- 2. Students had to travel to **landfills**, where cities bury the things they don't want.
- 3. Many of the things we throw away, such as newspapers, glass bottles, and some metals, are **recyclables**. We shouldn't throw them away.
- 4. We are in **deep** trouble. If we don't do something soon, it may be too late.
- 5. Hazardous materials contain poisonous chemicals.

# 5 The Garbage Project

Most archaeologists study buried houses, broken objects, and old garbage to learn important things about ancient societies. At the University of Arizona in the United States, however, archaeology students are

- investigating today's garbage. They hope to learn important things about <u>modern</u> society by studying its garbage. The Garbage Project started at the University of Arizona in 1973. Since then, students have studied garbage in cities in the United States, Canada,
- 10 and Mexico.

Telegram:@IELTSMatters

To study the modern world's garbage, students had to travel to landfills, the places where cities bury their garbage. While the students were studying the garbage, they wore special clothes and used safety equipment.

15 Students were also very careful when they opened bags of garbage.





today's



What have students in the Garbage Project learned from studying modern garbage? One important thing they learned is that the garbage in landfills disappears very slowly. That was surprising to the students, as well as to many scientists who had predicted that roughly 70% of the garbage in landfills would disappear naturally and quickly. Even in cities where it rains a lot, the students found newspapers from 1948, forty-year-old hot dogs, and lettuce from 1970.

The Garbage Project also <u>revealed</u> that what people say they do is often very different from what they <u>actually</u> do. The archaeology students asked people what they bought, ate, and drank, and then they compared this to what people threw away. For some reason, the two didn't match. For example, the students found many more empty bottles of alcohol than people said they drank.

Information from the Garbage Project has also
helped us to see how much garbage we actually put in
landfills. The students are hopeful that this will
encourage us to find better ways to <u>dispose of</u> our
garbage. Of course, the best way to dispose of garbage
depends on what kind of garbage it is: regular garbage,

40 <u>hazardous</u> materials, or recyclables, such as newspapers, glass bottles, and some metals. Regular garbage goes to regular landfills. Hazardous materials, on the other hand, contain poisonous chemicals or metals. They shouldn't go into regular landfills.

Ordinary houses are full of hazardous waste. The most problematic hazardous waste in homes is batteries. When batteries end up in a landfill, they often break open. The poison inside them moves through rain water and other liquids to the bottom of the landfill.

50 Then it can pollute the natural water in the ground. People could avoid this problem by using rechargeable batteries.

Another hazardous waste from homes is motor oil. When people pour old motor oil on the ground or throw it in the garbage, it poisons the environment. They should recycle old motor oil instead.

showed

really

throw away

dangerous





Unfortunately, recycling is expensive. It takes time, equipment, and special treatment. Toronto began the first recycling program in North America in 1982. The city started by recycling newspapers, and later it added glass and cans to its recycling program. When students from the Garbage Project studied the Toronto landfills, they found that recycling was having a positive effect. Since 1982, Toronto has reduced the amount of garbage going into its landfills by 25%.

A health official once said, "We're in <u>deep</u> trouble here. We have too much garbage, our landfills are closing, and we can't open new ones because people don't want them. If we don't do something about our garbage, we're going to be buried in it." The health official made that statement in 1889! Clearly, our garbage problem is not new, but as the world's population continues to grow, it will become a bigger and bigger problem.

(This article is based on an interview with Dr. William Rathje, the director of the Garbage Project at the University of Arizona.)

serious

# Vocabulary

|     | •   | archaeologist<br>battery<br>actual |                | modern       |                      |  |
|-----|---|------------------------------------|----------------|--------------|----------------------|--|
| 1.  | I am not very   |                                    | that pe        | ople will st | art recycling more o |  |
|     | their garbage.  |                                    |                |              |                      |  |
| 2.  | The hole in th  | e street is a                      |                | to cars.     |                      |  |
| 3.  | That light wor  | n't work without                   | a              | and the same | areadall see         |  |
| 4.  | I know we ma  | ike a lot of garba                 | ge, but I dor  | t know the   |                      |  |
|     |   | amount.                            |                |              |                      |  |
| 5.  |   | societies                          | produce mo     | re hazardoı  | is waste than        |  |
|     | ancient societi                                       | es did.                            | P. Linson, M.  |              |                      |  |
| 6.  | An  | needs                              | to have a st   | rong intere  | st in history.       |  |
| 7.  | Bottles, paper,                                       | and cans are exa                   | amples of dr   | y            | deal keep lay        |  |
| 8.  | After you cut   | the grass, please                  | do not put i   | t into a bag | and take it to       |  |
|     | the   | ; sprea                            | nd it on the g | arden inste  | ad.                  |  |
| 9.  | It is sometime  | s difficult to                     |                | an old       | automobile.          |  |
| 10. | At the end of t                                       | the movie, the he                  | ero            |              | her true identity.   |  |
|     | Vocabulary  | <u>y</u>                           |                |              |                      |  |
|     | 0   | investigated                       |                |              | on the other hand    |  |
|     | archaeologist   | _                                  |                |              | eveal                |  |
|     | recycle   | deep                               |                | O            | oatteries            |  |
|     |   | 1 , ,                              | ,              |              | it.                  |  |
| 2.  | They  | the                                | area for a we  | eek, but the | y couldn't           |  |
|     | find anything.  |                                    |                |              |                      |  |
| 3.  | She didn't feel                                       | comfortable with                   | h him becau    | se he asked  | a lot of             |  |
|     | questions.  |                                    |                |              |                      |  |
| 4.  | 4. I could stay home tomorrow and get some work done; |                                    |                |              |                      |  |
|     |   | , I could ta                       | ke the train   | to visit my  | family.              |  |
| 5.  | . Putting out fires is work.                          |                                    |                |              |                      |  |



| 7. The   | for my new camera a       | re                      |
|--|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| I just plug them in over                       | 11 - 11 C - 1 A - 7 1     |                         |
| as new.  | agni, and in the morning  | ing they are as good    |
| 3. That  | smells terrible           |                         |
| That woman is a famous                         |                           | She discovered an       |
| ancient city.                                  |                           |                         |
| I don't want to                                |                           | ioh. I hope to find an  |
| exciting job.                                  | nubonng                   | , job. Thope to find an |
| 98600  |                           |                         |
| Vocabulary Review                              | · Antonyms                |                         |
| Vocabalal y Neview                             | . Airtoryins              |                         |
| atch the words that mean the                   | opposite.                 |                         |
| 1. get along                                   | a. literate               |                         |
| 2. remote                                      | b. on time                |                         |
| 3. separate                                    | c. increase               |                         |
| 4. illiterate                                  | d. underpopulated         |                         |
| 5. roughly                                     | e. solid                  |                         |
| 6. hollow                                      | f. combine                |                         |
| 7. delayed                                     | g. nearby                 |                         |
| 8. no longer                                   | h. fight                  |                         |
| 9. humid                                       | i. training               |                         |
| 10. decrease                                   | j. group                  |                         |
| 11. overpopulated                              | k. exactly                |                         |
|  | l. still                  |                         |
|  | m. dry                    |                         |
|  | the state of the state of |                         |
| Multiple Choice                                |                           |                         |
| <u>.                                      </u> |                           |                         |
| The Garbage Project is                         |                           | . 1 1                   |
| a. a university program                        |                           | c. both a and b         |
| Poisonous chemicals pollu<br>a. water          | b. wastes                 | c. batteries            |
|  | v. wasics                 | c. valleries            |

Telegram:@IELTSMatters

| 3. | The Garbage Project is mor                       | re than years old      |      |              |  |
|----|--|------------------------|------|--------------|--|
|    | a. twenty  | b. thirty              | c.   | fifty        |  |
| 4. | The first recycling program                      | n in North America was | in . | <del></del>  |  |
|    | a. the United States                             | b. Mexico              | c.   | Canada       |  |
| 5. | Garbage in landfills disapp                      | ears                   |      |              |  |
|    | a. slowly  | b. completely          | c.   | quickly      |  |
| 6. | The most serious hazardou                        | s waste in homes is    |      |              |  |
|    | a. newspapers                                    | b. batteries           | c.   | motor oil    |  |
| 7. | The Garbage Project showe                        | ed that people         |      |              |  |
|    | a. don't know where their                        | garbage goes           |      |              |  |
|    | b. sometimes say one thing and do something else |                        |      |              |  |
|    | c. cannot change their beha                      | avior toward garbage   |      |              |  |
| 8. | Hazardous waste comes fro                        | om                     |      |              |  |
|    | a. ordinary houses                               | b. factories           | c.   | both a and b |  |
|    |  |                        |      |              |  |



## Comprehension Questions

*Use the text to answer these questions.* 

- 1. Name two kinds of hazardous waste in homes.
- 2. Why is hazardous waste dangerous?
- 3. Why did students use safety equipment when they went to the landfills?
- 4. What is the best way to dispose of garbage?
- 5. What is the connection between the Garbage Project and archaeology?
- 6. Why did the Garbage Project go to Toronto?
- 7. What are three things that we can recycle?
- 8. Do you think the problem of disposing of garbage is serious? Give a reason for your answer.



#### Main Idea

- 1. Write a sentence that gives the main idea for the paragraph that starts on line 17.
- 2. Which sentence is the main idea of the last paragraph?

| 16/602  |
|---------|
|         |
|         |
| Willia. |

## Two-Word Verbs

|           |                    |       |                | t you are there for<br>there for your roo | the flight or tell the |
|-----------|--------------------|-------|----------------|---|------------------------|
|           |                    |       | •              |   |                        |
|           | •                  | •     | 0              | ample, to school)                         |                        |
|           | get through =      |       |                |   |                        |
|           | •                  |       |                |   | e or where it belongs  |
|           | think over =       | thinl | k about carefu | ılly                                      |                        |
| 1.        | I can't give you   | ny a  | nswer right a  | way. I have to $\_\_$                     | و مرحد المجالة الد     |
|           | it                 |       | A              |   |                        |
| 2.        | You have to        | 7.00  |                | at the airport forty                      | r-five minutes before  |
|           | your flight leave  |       |                |   |                        |
| 3.        | Did you            |       | with           | your homework                             | yet?                   |
| 4.        | David didn't fini  | sh c  | ollege. He     |   | after his second year. |
| 5.        | Please             |       | the foo        | od  | in the                 |
|           | refrigerator. Don  |       |                |   |                        |
| end end a |                    |       |                |   |                        |
|           | Compound           | \/\/\ | rds            |   |                        |
|           | Compound           | VVOI  |                |   |                        |
|           |                    |       |                | e from the second co                      |                        |
| on        | e-word or two-word | d con | ipound. (More  | than one answer m                         | ay be possible.)       |
| _         |                    | 1.    | work           | a. report                                 |                        |
|           |                    | 2.    | search         | b. land                                   |                        |
| _         |                    | _ 3.  | fire           | c. bag                                    |                        |
|           | 4 -                | 4.    | food           | d. work                                   |                        |
|           |                    | _ 5.  | half           | e. light                                  |                        |
|           |                    |       | sun            | f. place                                  |                        |
|           |                    |       | house          | g. production                             |                        |
|           |                    |       | research       | h. party                                  |                        |
|           |                    |       | garbage        | i. wood                                   |                        |
|           |                    |       | farm           | j. way                                    |                        |
|           |                    | 10.   | Tallit         | j. way                                    |                        |



## **Connecting Words**

Use and to connect a sentence from the first column with a sentence from the second column. Use a comma before and. Write your answers on a separate piece of paper.

- 1. Studying old garbage can teach a. They open bags of garbage us about ancient societies.
- 2. Students in the Garbage Project wear safety equipment.
- 3. We dispose of regular garbage in regular landfills.
- 4. Hazardous waste contains poisonous chemicals.
- 5. The poison inside batteries can go to the bottom of a regular landfill.

- very carefully.
- b. Studying fresh garbage can teach us about modern society.
- c. It can pollute the natural water in the ground.
- d. We should dispose of hazardous waste in special landfills or by recycling.
- e. We must keep it out of regular landfills.



#### Main Idea

What is the main idea of paragraph 6 (lines 45–52)?



#### **Guided Writing**

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. Describe the Garbage Project. Tell what it is, who is in it, what they do, and why.
- 2. What kind of hazardous waste do we have in our homes, and how can we dispose of it?



# Video Highlights

# **a** Before You Watch

- 2. Read the dictionary definition of *obey*. Do you always obey your parents? What happened when you disobeyed your parents? Discuss with a partner.

**obey** /ou' beɪ, ə-/ v. [I;T] **obeyed, obeying, obeys** to do what is asked or ordered: *Soldiers obey their commander's orders*.

# **b** As You Watch

In this video you will meet a girl named Lalita. Watch the video and decide if the sentences are true or false. If the sentence is false, correct the mistake.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Lalita lives in Pakistan.
- \_\_\_\_\_\_ 2. Only one in four girls goes to school where Lalita lives.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Lalita disobeyed her parents.
- 4. She went to a village school when she was 13.
- \_\_\_\_\_\_ 5. Lalita went to a special boarding school when she was 18.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Lalita teaches karate now.
- \_\_\_\_\_\_ 7. Lalita's parents are happy that she goes to school now.



## After You Watch

1. What was life like for Lalita, her parents, and her village before she went to school? What is life like now? Write notes in the chart. Discuss your answers in class.

| Before                       | After                              |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
|                              | a south and open a                 |
|                              |                                    |
| = 1                          |                                    |
| and the second of the second | and and a constant of the first    |
| en e e Worth o e torie       | managga at 1888 til Seminary, samt |
|                              | and the second of the second       |
| mate policies based          |                                    |
| taken industrial             |                                    |

2. Circle adjectives that you think describe Lalita. Discuss in class why you chose those words.

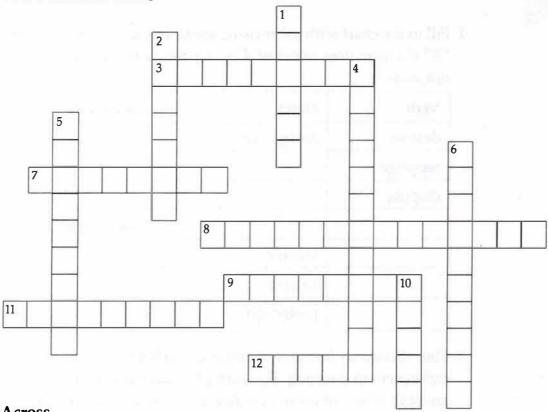
brave proud clever shy weak
positive successful modern expert kind
normal strong rude wealthy lonely

3. Using the words in Exercise 2, write sentences describing Lalita.

*Example:* Lalita is proud because she helped many girls in her village.

# **Activity Page**

#### **Crossword Puzzle**



#### Across

- 3. Another word for dangerous is \_
- 7. More than half of something is a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8. People who study old things are called \_\_\_\_
- 9. The opposite of *negative* is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 11. Your aunts, uncles, and cousins are your \_\_\_\_\_.
- 12. The \_\_\_\_\_ of a plant are usually under the ground.

#### Down

- 1. The opposite of ancient is \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 2. A \_\_\_\_\_ pain is a long-lasting pain.
- 4. People who study how societies work are called \_\_
- 5. Another word for *slowly* is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6. An \_\_\_\_\_ person is someone who can't read.
- 10. The opposite of *full* is \_\_\_\_\_.

# **Dictionary Page**

#### **Working with Word Forms**

1. Fill in the chart with the missing forms of each word. Write an "X" if a form does not exist. Check your dictionary if you are not sure.

| Verb     | Noun        | Adjective   |
|----------|-------------|-------------|
| destroy  | destruction | destructive |
| recharge |             |             |
| dispose  |             |             |
| 7.0      |             | surprising  |
|          | literacy    |             |
|          | hazard      |             |
|          | protection  |             |

2. Your dictionary has sample sentences to help you understand differences in meaning. For example, *industrious* and *industrial* are both adjective forms of *industry*. However, they are not used in the same way. Read these sentences to understand the difference:

Ali is wealthy because he is so *industrious*. Tokyo is a modern, *industrial* city.

3. Use the information on this page to help you complete these sentences.

Example: Floods and earthquakes can cause a lot of destruction.

a. Most parents will do everything they can to

\_\_\_\_\_ their children from harm.

- b. A \_\_\_\_\_\_ person can read and write.
- c. \_\_\_\_\_ materials are dangerous.
- d. It is important for people to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ of their waste in ways that will not harm the environment.



# A Mishmash, or Hodgepodge

unit 3

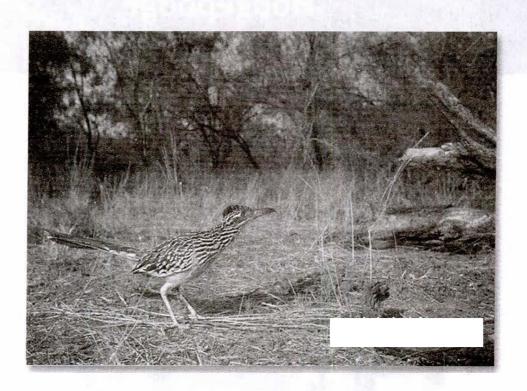
The world is so full of a number of things, I'm sure we should all be as happy as kings.

—Robert Louis Stevenson



## **Roadrunners**

lesson



## Before You Read

- 1. How would you describe this bird to another person?
- 2. Why do you think this bird is called a roadrunner?
- 3. What would you like to find out about this kind of bird?



#### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- Roadrunners live in the desert zone of the southwestern United States.
- 2. A roadrunner eats plants **once** in a while, but it is mostly a meat eater.
- 3. The bird doesn't always eat the food right there. Sometimes it carries the food home.
- 4. Most of its **diet** is insects, but it also catches birds, mice, and other small animals.
- 5. The male bird gives the female bird **presents** such as twigs (tiny branches of a tree) or something to eat.

# 1 Roadrunners



If you say the word *roadrunner* to people in the United States, they will probably think of a famous cartoon program that was on television. In the cartoon, a funny-looking bird was always outsmarting a coyote.

5 The bird in this cartoon program was based on a bird called a roadrunner.

Real roadrunners live in the desert **zone** of the southwestern United States and northern Mexico. A roadrunner is a bird, but it can fly only about as much as a chicken can. People gave it its name because they usually see it running across a road, but, of course, a roadrunner spends more time among the plants of the desert than it does on roads.

The roadrunner is quite a large bird—about forty-five centimeters long and twenty-five centimeters high. People laugh when it runs because it looks so funny. It holds its head <u>straight</u> out in front, and its tail

not curved or bent



sticks straight out in back. It takes long steps and can run 30 kilometers an hour.

A roadrunner eats an amazing variety of food. Most of its **diet** is insects, but it also catches birds, mice, and other small animals. It is even brave enough to catch tarantulas, <u>snakes</u>, and black widow <u>spiders</u>. A roadrunner eats plants once in a while, but it is 25 mostly a meat eater. The bird doesn't always eat the food right there. Sometimes it carries the food home.

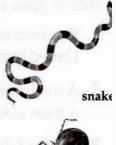
In the spring, a male roadrunner begins looking for a female to be his mate. When he finds one, he gives her 30 **presents**—snakes to eat or twigs (tiny branches of a tree) to use in building a nest. After they build their nest, the female lays eggs and the male and female raise their young.

Some roadrunners become very friendly with 35 people. One couple in Arizona feeds a pair of roadrunners that come to their house every day. One at a time, each bird makes a noise outside the window. If someone doesn't immediately give the bird a piece of hamburger, the bird knocks on the window with its

40 beak. According to this couple, the birds behave like a pet dog or cat. For example, when the woman whistles, the birds come running. When the man leaves the house, the roadrunners walk along behind him. Clearly, roadrunners are not shy.

Another couple in Arizona feeds a pair of roadrunners that come right into their house. The two birds will stand on a chair or table and watch television, and they seem really interested in what is happening on the program. In the spring, the male sometimes 50 brings gifts to the couple—an insect, or a leaf or twig for building a nest.

In the winter, when nighttime temperatures in the desert can be 20°C colder than daytime temperatures, a roadrunner lowers its body temperature during the 55 night to save body heat. In the morning, however, the bird needs to warm up quickly so that it can run if it needs to. To warm up quickly, the roadrunner stands





makes a sound by blowing air through the lips

45

with its back to the sun. It holds out its wings and lifts the feathers on its upper back. Under these feathers, there is a dark **spot** on the bird's skin. This spot collects heat from the weak morning sun and quickly warms the bird's body and raises its body temperature.

Some people in Mexican villages use roadrunner meat as medicine. They believe that because roadrunners can eat poisonous animals and not die, their meat should be good for human sickness.

Maybe we shouldn't laugh at the roadrunner.
Even though it looks funny when it runs, it has
developed a special way to keep warm, and it can eat poisonous animals. It can even make friends with humans. It fits into its environment very well, and it doesn't matter that it looks funny.

perhaps although

## **a** Vocabulary

|     | present                | aiet                | straignt        | sny                     |
|-----|------------------------|---------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
|     | mate                   | knock               | fit             | lift                    |
|     | even though            | snakes              | maybe           | whistled                |
| 1.  | Some                   | are dange           | rous, but mo    | st are not.             |
| 2.  | Both the female bird   | and her             |                 | take care of the young. |
| 3.  | On the                 | part of th          | e road, peop    | ole drive a lot faster. |
| 4.  | Tourists don't usually | у                   | into th         | eir surroundings        |
|     | because they talk and  | d act differently t | han everyon     | e else.                 |
| 5.  | The class is going to  | walk to the muse    | um              | it is                   |
|     | raining hard.          |                     |                 |                         |
| 6.  | The majority of peop   | le in China live o  | n a             | based on                |
|     | rice and vegetables.   |                     |                 |                         |
| 7.  | I thought it was a roa | drunner, but        |                 |                         |
| 8.  | John                   | for a taxi, a       | nd one stopp    | oed.                    |
| 9.  | I can                  | the box, bu         | t I can't carry | y it very far.          |
| 10. | When she finished co   | llege, Joan receiv  | ed a car fror   | n her parents as        |
|     | a                      | tho I o mi          |                 |                         |

9

| 100 | 2270 | 333      |  |
|-----|------|----------|--|
|     | 8    | <b>%</b> |  |
|     |      | 8        |  |
| 2   | 38   | 1        |  |
| 1   | 40%  | m        |  |

## Vocabulary

|     | knock<br>spider<br>fits       | carries<br>shy<br>snakes | spot<br>stick out<br>nest                | once in a while<br>lifts<br>zones |
|-----|-------------------------------|--------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1.  | The largest feet long.        |                          | in the world a                           | re more than thirty               |
| 2.  | O                             | 1 191                    | at the doo                               | r, I went to answer it.           |
|     |                               |                          | lot, but she goes to th                  |                                   |
|     | only                          |                          | e i televe                               |                                   |
| 4.  |                               |                          | ha                                       |                                   |
|     |                               |                          | your tongue; it is ve                    |                                   |
| 6.  | Jean has a                    |                          | on her new shir                          | t, and she can't get it out.      |
| 7.  | The Earth has se              | everal diffe             | rent temperature                         |                                   |
| 8.  | He usually                    |                          | his wallet in hi                         | s pocket.                         |
| 9.  | Birds build a                 |                          | in the spring                            | PRODUCE VE                        |
| 10. | Even though sh                | e is very _              | , S                                      | he is good at                     |
|     | making speeche                | es.                      |  |                                   |
| C   | Vocabulary tch the words with |                          |  |                                   |
|     | 1. hazardo                    |                          |  | hooks                             |
|     | 1. Hazardo<br>2. literate     |                          | print and distribute moisture in the air |                                   |
|     | 2. Inerate 3. landfill        |                          | someone who studi                        | ice ancient things                |
| 10  | 3. landilii<br>4. humidit     |                          | someone who studi                        |                                   |
|     | 5. publish                    |                          | for example                              | les familles                      |
|     | 6. region                     |                          | having nothing insi                      | de                                |
|     | 7. archaeol                   |                          | able to read and wr                      |                                   |
|     | 8. recyclabl                  | 0                        | area                                     | mark in a state of the contract   |
|     | 9. empty                      |                          | very dangerous                           |                                   |
|     | 10. such as                   |                          | domestic                                 |                                   |
|     |                               |                          | a place for garbage                      |                                   |
|     |                               |                          | able to be used mor                      | e than once                       |
|     |                               |                          |  |                                   |

# d True/False/Not Enough Information

| 1. | The roadrunner runs around the desert, looking for food.   |
|----|--|
| 2. | Roadrunners live only in Mexico and the United States.     |
| 3. | The female gives the male gifts in the spring.             |
| 4. | A roadrunner is afraid of people and stays away from them. |
| 5. | This bird can learn to depend on people.                   |
| 6. | A big difference between daytime and nighttime temperature |
|    | is typical in the desert.                                  |
| 7. | A roadrunner uses a lot of energy keeping warm in winter.  |



#### Comprehension Questions

1. Explain why the roadrunner is not a typical bird.

8. The roadrunner is a typical bird.

- 2. What does a roadrunner eat?
- 3. Why does a male give gifts to a female?
- 4. Why do people laugh at the roadrunner?
- 5. Explain how the roadrunner gets warm in winter.
- 6. Do you think sick people will get better if they eat roadrunner meat? Explain your answer.
- 7. Do you think it is a good idea to feed wild animals? Give a reason.
- 8. Explain how a roadrunner fits into its environment.

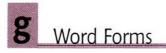


#### Main Idea

Many paragraphs have one sentence that gives the main idea. It can be in different places in a paragraph.

- 1. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 4 (lines 20–27)?
- 2. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 6 (lines 34–44)?
- 3. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 9 (lines 64–67)?
- 4. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 10 (lines 68–73)?





Nouns are often used to describe other nouns. The meaning is different than when the adjective form of the same word is used.

Cuba had a literacy program in the 1960s.

A literate person can read and write.

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns. Then circle any nouns in the sentences that describe another noun.

|     | Verb        | Noun                 | Adjective                  | Adverb                         |
|-----|-------------|----------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1.  |             | environment          | environmental              | environmentally                |
| 2.  | complicate  | complication         | (un)complicated            |                                |
| 3.  | hope        | hope                 | hopeful<br>hopeless        | hopefully                      |
| 4.  | waste       | waste                | wasteful                   | wastefully                     |
| 5.  | dispose     | disposal             | disposable                 | Abjord (Mod City)              |
| 6.  | depend (on) | (in)dependence       | (in)dependent              | (in)dependently                |
| 7.  | succeed     | success              | successful                 | successfully                   |
| 8.  | vary        | variety<br>variation | various                    |                                |
| 9.  | finance     | finances             | financial                  | financially                    |
| 10. | know        | knowledge            | (un)known<br>knowledgeable | (un)knowingly<br>knowledgeably |

| 1. | Water pollution is an problem.                             |  |  |
|----|--|--|--|
| 2. | This is a problem, and I can't find the solution.          |  |  |
| 3. | There was a bad accident on the highway this morning. I am |  |  |
|    | that no one died.  |  |  |
| 4. | Some products from factories can be reused.                |  |  |

| 5.  | Doctors and dentists use gloves so that they don't   |
|-----|--|
|     | spread disease from one patient to another.  |
| 6.  | Instead of working in groups, we are supposed to work  |
|     | The state of the s |
| 7.  | The movie was a huge, making its director a happy  |
|     | and rich person.   |
| 8.  | A supermarket sells a large of products.   |
| 9.  | If you don't stop spending so much money, you are going to have serious problems.  |
| 10. | Barbara is very about birds. She has been studying   |
|     | them for years.  |
|     | Them for years.  |
|     | Prepositions   |
| Put | a preposition in each blank.   |
| 1.  | The bird this cartoon program was based a bird called  |
|     | a roadrunner.  |
| 2.  | Roadrunners live the desert zone the United States   |
|     | and Mexico.  |
| 3.  | It spends more time the plants the desert than it does   |
|     | roads.   |
| 4.  | Once a while, it eats plants.  |
| 5.  | the spring, a male roadrunner begins looking a mate.   |
| 6.  | Roadrunners can also become friendly people.   |
| 7.  | The birds come one a time and make a noise the window.   |
| 8.  | The bird knocks the window its beak.   |
| 9.  | These birds come right the house.  |
| 10. | They seem really interested what is happening the program.   |
| 11. | the winter, nighttime temperatures the desert can be 20°C  |
|     | colder than daytime temperatures.  |
| 12. | To warm up quickly, the roadrunner stands its back   |
|     | the sun.   |
|     |  |





## **Connecting Words**

Use **even though** to connect a sentence from the first column with one from the second column. Write the new sentences on a separate sheet of paper.

- 1. A roadrunner is considered to be a bird.
- 2. The Garbage Project studies landfills.
- 3. Rain forests cannot support agriculture.
- 4. We still use petroleum in cars.
- 5. Women do most of the domestic work.
- a. They have plants.
- b. It is sometimes dangerous.
- c. They work outside the home too.
- d. We know it pollutes the air.
- e. It can't fly very far.



### Summarizing

Which sentence is the best summary?

- 1. Paragraph 4 (lines 20-27)
  - a. It eats insects, mice, and other small animals.
  - b. It eats both plants and meat.
  - c. It eats a large variety of food, both plants and meat.
- 2. Paragraphs 6 and 7 (lines 34-51)
  - a. Roadrunners follow people, ask for food, and watch television.
  - b. Roadrunners can become friendly with people.
  - c. Roadrunners sometimes bring gifts to people.
- 3. Paragraph 8 (lines 52-63)
  - a. Temperatures are much colder at night than during the day.
  - b. A roadrunner has an unusual way to keep warm in winter.
  - c. A roadrunner collects heat from the sun through a black spot on its back.



## Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. Describe a roadrunner. Include the three most interesting things about a roadrunner, in your opinion.
- 2. Exactly how does a roadrunner fit into its environment?



# Afraid to Fly

lesson

2



#### Before You Read

- 1. What are some common problems airplane passengers have?
- 2. What makes you nervous when you are flying in an airplane?
- 3. Do any of these things make you nervous—standing on the roof of a building, giving a speech, snakes, or spiders?



#### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. It's smart to be afraid of some things. For example, being afraid of poisonous spiders is **logical**.
- 2. Some people are afraid of going through a **tunnel** on a highway.
- 3. A plane **crash** is always in the news, but we never hear about the millions of flights every year that are safe.
- They listen to a tape recording of an airplane takeoff and landing at an airport.

# 2 Afraid to Fly



How do you feel about flying in an airplane? Do you find it boring, exciting, or downright **terrifying**? People who have to fly all the time for business often find it boring. People who fly only once in a while think

5 it's exciting. However, some people feel only terror when they get on an airplane. Their fear of flying can prevent them from traveling to other countries or

visiting friends far away.

It's smart to be afraid of some things. For example,
being afraid of poisonous spiders is logical. However, if
you are afraid of all spiders, even <u>harmless</u> ones, you
have an illogical fear, or a **phobia**. Three common
phobias are fear of <u>heights</u>, fear of being enclosed in a
small area, and fear of being in a large open area. It is

not logical to be afraid of these things when there is no danger, but a phobia is not logical.

Fear of flying is another phobia. A plane **crash** is always in the news, but we never hear about the

very frightening

not dangerous

plural noun for high



millions of flights every year that are safe. Riding in a car is thirty times more dangerous than flying, but most of us are not afraid every time we get into a car. It is not logical to be afraid of flying, but research indicates that about 12% of people have this fear.

People with a phobia about flying are afraid for one or more reasons. They might be afraid of heights. People who have a fear of heights avoid high places, and if they are in a high-rise building, they don't look out the windows.

They might also be afraid of being in an enclosed place like an elevator or a <u>tunnel</u> on a highway. When they get on an airplane, they can't get out until the end of the flight, and the flight might last several hours.

People with a fear of flying might be afraid of the crowds and all the noise and people rushing around at an airport. This especially **bothers** older people.

Some people are afraid of the unknown. They don't understand the technology of flying and can't believe that a huge airplane can stay up in the air.

Others are afraid of <u>loss</u> of control. They need to control every **situation** they are in. When they drive a car, they have some chance of avoiding an **accident**. In a plane, they have no control over anything. It terrifies them to give up control to the pilot and the rest of the crew.

For some people, a fear of flying is not important because they don't really need to fly. But what about someone who works for an international company? What about an entertainer who has to sing in twenty different places in a month? These people have to fly if they want to continue in their professions.

There is help for these people. There are special classes in which people learn how to control their fear. They probably can't lose it, but they can learn to control it. Then they can fly when they need to, even though they probably won't enjoy it.

The class visits an airport and learns how airplane **traffic** is controlled and how planes are kept in safe condition. A pilot talks about flying through storms, the



tunnel

noun for lose



different noises an airplane makes, and air safety in general. The class learns to do relaxation exercises, and the people talk about their fear.

Next, the class listens to tape recordings of a **takeoff** and landing, and later the people ride in a plane on the ground around the airport. Finally, they are ready to take a short flight.

The <u>instructors</u> of these classes are sometimes **psychologists.** They say that between 80 and 90% of the people who take the classes are successful. They still have their phobia, but they learn to control their fear.

teachers

70 Some of them even learn to enjoy flying.



#### Vocabulary

|     | terror          | height         | fear               | logical             | :-               |
|-----|-----------------|----------------|--------------------|---------------------|------------------|
|     | situation       | crash          | takeoff            | tunnels             |                  |
|     | harm            | bother         | phobia             | losses              |                  |
| 1.  | A plane         | medical rate   | usually kills      | a lot of people.    |                  |
| 2.  | Tom found him   | nself in a dif | ficult             | , and               | l he didn't know |
|     | what to do.     |                |                    |                     |                  |
| 3.  | A               | is a           | n illogical fear o | of something.       |                  |
| 4.  |                 | is a ve        | ery strong word    | for fear.           |                  |
| 5.  |                 | is the         | feeling you hav    | e when you are      | e afraid.        |
| 6.  | Ali's company   | had so man     | y financial        | In PL               | that it went     |
|     | out of business |                |                    |                     |                  |
| 7.  | Some dogs bite  | , but most o   | f them won't _     | The second services | anyone.          |
| 8.  | There are sever | al             | und                | ler the rivers fro  | om Manhattan     |
|     | Island to New   | ersey and th   | ne other parts of  | f New York.         |                  |
| 9.  | After           |                | the airplane cre   | ew usually brin     | gs around        |
|     | drinks and food | <del>d</del> . |                    | -dudy Japan         | ML bolinia fi    |
| 10. | What is the     |                | of the tall        | est building in     | your city?       |



# **b** Vocabulary

|     | bother             | accidents       | tunnels             | psycho         |
|-----|--------------------|-----------------|---------------------|----------------|
|     | terrified          | traffic         | in general          | harmle         |
|     | logical            | instructor      | terrifying          |                |
| 1.  | There is a lot of  |                 | on the roads b      | etween 4 anc   |
|     | when people lea    | ve work to go l | nome.               |                |
| 2.  | Anne was           |                 | when she saw a car  | coming strai   |
|     | at her.            |                 |                     |                |
| 3.  | Many more peop     | ole die in car_ | t                   | han in plane ι |
| 4.  | A                  | can help        | you learn to contro | ol your fear.  |
| 5.  | An                 | is a tea        | icher.              |                |
| 6.  | It's raining today | , but           | the wea             | ther here is p |
| 7.  | What is the        |                 | thing to do when    | the telephone  |
| 8.  | For some people,   | descending to   | the ocean floor wor | uld be a       |
|     |                    | experience      |                     |                |
| 9.  | Most snakes are    |                 | ; only a few ki     | nds are poisc  |
| 10. | Please don't       |                 | _ me now. I'm busy  | 7.             |
|     |                    |                 |                     |                |

# C Vocabulary Review

Cross out the word that does not belong with the other two.

- 1. roots, snakes, branches
- 2. once, couple, pair
- 3. knock, touch, run
- 4. threaten, take care of, help
- 5. even, even though, although
- 6. often, sometimes, once in a while
- 7. pollution, surroundings, environment
- 8. twenty-five, two-thirds, 40%
- 9. hazardous, dangerous, positive
- 10. married, divorced, published





## Multiple Choice

| 1. | may think flying is boring.                                    |  |
|----|--|--|
|    | a. People who fly once in a while                              |  |
|    | b. People who fly often  |  |
|    | c. People who have a phobia about flying                       |  |
| 2. | A phobia is  |  |
|    | a. positive  |  |
|    | b. illogical   |  |
|    | c. chemical  |  |
| 3. | About of people are afraid to fly.                             |  |
|    | a. 6%  |  |
|    | b. 12%   |  |
|    | c. 15%   |  |
| 4. | A person with a fear of enclosed places doesn't like           |  |
|    | a. walking on a path   |  |
|    | b. high places   |  |
|    | c. being in a tunnel   |  |
| 5. | especially bother older people.                                |  |
|    | a. Crowds at airports  |  |
|    | b. High-rise buildings   |  |
|    | c. Spiders   |  |
| 6. | A fear of flying is not important to some people because       |  |
|    | a. they are entertainers                                       |  |
|    | b. they don't need to fly                                      |  |
|    | c. they can take a class about flying                          |  |
| 7. | The instructor of a class for people who are afraid of         |  |
|    | flying   |  |
|    | a. explains about airplane crashes                             |  |
|    | b. learns to relax   |  |
|    | c. takes them to an airport                                    |  |
| 8. | More than of the people who take these classes are successful. |  |
|    | a. 12%   |  |
|    | b. 80%   |  |
|    | c. 90%   |  |
|    |  |  |





#### Comprehension Questions

- 1. Have you ever flown in an airplane? If you have, when was the last time you flew?
- 2. What are two examples of phobias?
- 3. Why aren't most people afraid when they get into a car?
- 4. Give four reasons people are afraid of flying.
- 5. Give four examples of people who need to fly.
- 6. What are three things that people learn in a class for those who are afraid of flying?
- 7. How does learning how airplane traffic is controlled help people who are afraid of flying?
- 8. Why does the class learn about the different noises a plane makes?
- 9. How do relaxation exercises help the people in the class?



#### Main Idea

- 1. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 8 (lines 39–44)?
- 2. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 11 (lines 56–61)?
- 3. Write a sentence for the main idea of the last paragraph.



#### Word Forms: Adverbs

Adverbs describe verbs. They also describe adjectives and other adverbs. Many adverbs end in -ly— for example, badly and nicely. But there also are a few adjectives that end in -ly—for example, friendly and lovely. There are also some common adverbs that do not end in -ly, such as fast and hard.

Please return to the office immediately.

Your solution to this math problem is completely wrong.

Ali worked especially hard today.

Ann is a friendly person.

Mike works hard at his job.



Sometimes an adverb or an adverbial phrase describes the whole sentence. It is followed by a comma.

**Most importantly,** you must hand in a report of the meeting by tomorrow morning.

**Ordinarily**, the class finishes at 2:00. Today, it will last until 2:30 because we have a special lecture.

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

|    | Verb     | Noun                | Adjective               | Adverb                  |
|----|----------|---------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. |          | accident            | accidental              | accidentally            |
| 2. |          | profession          | professional            | professionally          |
| 3. | secrete  | secret              | secretive               | secretly                |
| 4. | separate | separation          | separate                | separately              |
| 5. | fear     | fear                | fearful<br>fearless     | fearfully<br>fearlessly |
| 6. | lose     | loss                | lost                    |                         |
| 7. | terrify  | terror<br>terrorist | terrified<br>terrifying | terrifyingly            |

| 1. | During lunch, the waiter a customer. Even though it was an |   |
|----|--|---|
| 2. | They did a job on  | A LONG THE REPORT OF THE PARTY |
|    | it better.   | mant to man statement   |
| 3. | She took off her shoes so that she could                   | enter the building  |
|    | She wanted her a   | rrival to be a  |
| 4. | I don't want to ride                                       | Let's ride together.  |
| 5. | Superman is  |   |
| 6. | The Student Union has a                                    | and Found office. If you are  |
|    | lucky, you might find something there                      | that you left in the cafeteria  |
|    | by mistake.  |   |
| 7. | Two hijacked an a  | irplane and made the pilot fly to   |
|    | Paris. The passengers were                                 | It was a  |
|    | experience for the   | m.  |





## Articles

| P  | ut articles in the blanks if they are necessary.                                  |
|--|---|
| 1  | people who have to fly all time for business often                                |
|  | find it boring.   |
| 2  | However, some people feel only terror when they get on                            |
|  | airplane.   |
| 3.   | Being afraid of poisonous spiders is logical.                                     |
| 4.   | Three common phobias are fear of heights, fear of being                           |
|  | enclosed in small area, and fear of being in large open area                      |
| 5.   | A plane crash is always in news, but we never hear about                          |
|  | millions of flights every year that are safe.                                     |
| 6.   | People who have a fear of heights avoid high places, and if they are              |
|  | in high-rise building, they don't look out windows.                               |
| 7.   | They might also be afraid of being in enclosed place like                         |
|  | elevator or tunnel on highway.  |
| 8.   | When they get on airplane, they can't get out until end of                        |
|  | flight, and flight might last several hours.                                      |
| 8.96   |   |
| STATE OF THE PARTY | Connecting Words  |
|  | Commercially Worlds   |
|  | se and, but, or even though to connect a sentence in the second column with a     |
|  | ntence in the first column. Use a comma before and or but. Write the sentences on |
|  | separate piece of paper.  |
| 1.   | Businesspeople are bored a. They didn't have good equipment.                      |
| 2  | with flying. equipment.  A roadrunner fits well into b. It looks funny.           |
|  | its environment.  c. Amundsen had arrived   |
| 3.   | People started exploring the there first.   |
|  | ocean floor. d. People who don't fly very often find                              |
| 4.   | The boat was caught in a it exciting.   |
| 5  | bad storm. e. It sank. Scott reached the South Pole.                              |
| J.   | Scott feached the South Fole.   |



## Summarizing

Write a sentence to summarize each of these paragraphs. Number 2 will have a long sentence. For numbers 1 and 3, write a sentence with only the most important idea.

- 1. Paragraph 3 (lines 17–23)
- 2. Paragraphs 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9 (lines 29-50)
- 3. Paragraph 10 (lines 51-55)



## **Guided Writing**

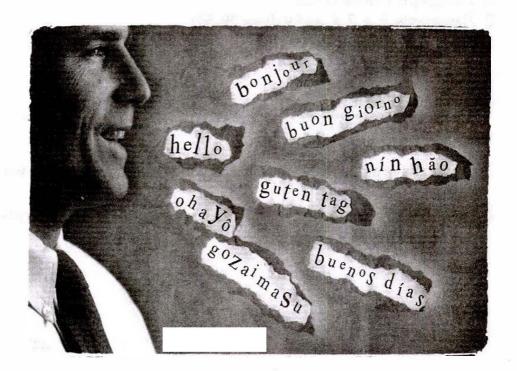
Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. Do you have a phobia? Describe it. If you wanted to control it, what would you do?
- 2. Describe the most terrifying trip you have ever taken, on an airplane or any other kind of transportation.



# lesson

# Languages and Language Diversity



#### **Before You Read**

- 1. What languages do you speak?
- 2. How is your first language different from English?
- 3. How many languages do you think there are in the world?



#### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. All languages have rules for **forming** words and for ordering those words into sentences.
- 2. People invent new words for their language and **borrow** words from other languages.
- 3. Languages are now disappearing at a rapid rate.
- 4. Experts **estimate** that the world loses a language every two weeks.
- 5. In one study, researchers looked at **bilingual** adults. Some of the adults learned a second language when they were children, and some learned a second language as adults.

# 3 Languages and Language Diversity



A language is a **system** of sounds, gestures, or **characters** used to communicate ideas and feelings. There are roughly 6,000 languages in the world today. Some languages are used by millions of people. Others have only a few speakers.

All languages have rules for **forming** words and for ordering those words into **meaningful** sentences. In written languages, meaning is expressed through a system of characters and rules for combining those characters. In spoken languages, meaning is expressed through a system of sounds and rules for combining those sounds. Many hearing-impaired people use sign languages, in which gestures do the work of the sound system of spoken languages.



133

Word order is more important in English than it is in some other languages such as Russian. The sound system is very important in Chinese and in many languages spoken in West Africa.

Languages are always changing, but they change
very slowly. People invent new words for their
language, **borrow** words from other languages, and
change the meanings of words as needed. For example,
the English word *byte* was invented by computer **specialists** in 1959. The English word *tomato* was
borrowed from Nahuatl, an American Indian language

borrowed from Nahuatl, an American Indian language spoken in Mexico. The English word *meat* once **referred to** food in general.

There are several major language families in the world. The languages in each family are related, and scientists think that they came from the same parent family. Language families come in different sizes. The Austronesian family contains at least 500 languages, including Pilipino, Malay, and Maori. The Basque language, spoken in northern Spain, is the only member of its language family.

The Indo-European language family contains fifty-five languages, including English. German, Spanish, Russian, and Hindi are also Indo-European languages. Another language family is Sino-Tibetan, which

40 includes Chinese, Burmese, and Tibetan. The Afro-Asiatic family includes Arabic, Hebrew, and Amharic. There are about 150 American Indian languages spoken today. These languages have many differences among them and have been <u>divided</u> into

45 more than fifty language families.

Today, 50% of the world's population speaks one of the top fifteen languages. The world's most common language is Mandarin Chinese, which has more than 1 billion speakers. English is the international language 50 for science and business. In fact, English has more second-language speakers than first-language speakers.

People learn languages by listening, reading, and using the language. Most children learn their first language easily—and sometimes other languages as

separated

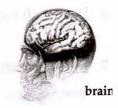




well. Adults often must work harder at learning a second language.

Recent research indicates that a child's **brain**actually learns a new language differently than an
adult's brain does. In one study, scientists used a special
60 machine to look at the brains of **bilingual** adults. Some
of the adults learned a second language when they were
children, and some learned a second language as adults.
The study showed that children use the same part of
their brain to learn both their first language and a
65 second language. Adults, on the other hand, used
a different area of their brain to process the

Languages have come and gone in the **past**, but they are now disappearing at a rapid **rate**. Experts **estimate**70 that, on average, the world loses a language every two weeks. Some **linguists** believe that half of the world's languages could disappear in the next 100 years if we don't do anything. That would be roughly 3,000 languages lost forever. Should we let that happen?



able to speak two languages

judge; calculate

people who study languages

# \

### Vocabulary

second language.

|    | systems           | characters           | form              | meaningful                |
|----|-------------------|----------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|
|    | borrow            | specializes          | refer to          | divided                   |
|    | past              | rate                 | estimate          | linguists                 |
| 1. | There are many    | different writing    |                   | The English               |
|    | language uses th  | ne Roman alphabe     | et.               |                           |
| 2. | A dermatologist   | is a doctor who $\_$ |                   | in problems of            |
|    | the skin.         |                      |                   | the state of the state of |
| 3. | The United State  | es is                | into fift         | y states.                 |
| 4. | In the            | fifty ye             | ears, the popula  | tion of the world has     |
|    | increased rapidly | <b>y.</b>            |                   |                           |
| 5. | Can I             | your p               | en for just a mir | nute?                     |
|    |                   |                      |                   |                           |



135

|     | dry snow. wet snow into balls than to use                           |
|-----|---|
| 7   | In some countries, students their professors by their               |
|     | first names.  |
| 8.  | Noam Chomsky, a professor at MIT, is one of the most famous         |
|     | in the world.   |
| 9.  | A team of workers can build a car at a faster than                  |
|     | people working alone.   |
| 10. | The word <i>diversity</i> has nine                                  |
|     | Vocabulary  |
|     | rate estimate meaningful bilingual                                  |
|     | brain specialist reference divide                                   |
|     | past system characters linguistics                                  |
| 1.  | The best way to become is to live in a                              |
|     | foreign country.  |
| 2.  | His friends began to worry about him when he said that there was no |
|     | longer anything in his life.  |
| 3.  | If you want to study how people learn languages, you should take a  |
|     | course.   |
| 4.  | Motorcyclists wear helmets to prevent injury in                     |
|     | an accident.  |
| 5.  | I don't know the exact population of my city, but I                 |
|     | that there are about 2 million people.                              |
| 6.  | My dentist said that I need to go to a to get my                    |
|     | tooth fixed.  |
| 7.  | During the president's speech, she made to an                       |
|     | important new medical study.  |
| 8.  | The computer for the whole office was down for                      |
|     | two days.   |
| 9.  | When you exercise, your heart goes up.                              |
|     | We had such a large class that the instructor had to i              |
|     | up into three groups.   |
| 26  |   |



### Vocabulary Review: Antonyms

Match the words that mean the opposite.

| <br>1. harmless | a. negative |
|-----------------|-------------|
|                 |             |

- 2. instructor b. full
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. once in a while c. certainly
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. lift d. often \_\_\_\_ 5. maybe e. student
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. terrify f. request
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. empty g. calm \_\_\_\_\_ 8. positive h. land
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. demand i. fear
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. take off j. hazardous
  - k. drop

# d

### True/False/Not Enough Information

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. We don't know the exact number of languages used today.
- 2. Word order is the same in all languages.
  - \_\_\_\_ 3. There is more than one kind of sign language.
- 4. Many hearing-impaired people use a sign language.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Many food words in English come from other languages.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. A language family can be small or large.
- 7. There is nothing we can do to prevent the loss of half the world's languages.
  - 8. More people speak Chinese than any other language.
- 9. Fifty percent of the world's population speaks Chinese.
- \_\_\_\_\_\_ 10. Adults and children use different parts of their brain to learn a second language.





### Comprehension Questions

- 1. What is the definition of a language?
- 2. What is a sign language?
- 3. In English, the basic order of words in a sentence is subject, verb, object. What is the basic order of words in your first language?
- 4. What is an example of a borrowed word?
- 5. What is an example of an invented word?
- 6. What is one difference between the Austronesian language family and the Indo-European language family?
- 7. Why is it useful to group languages into families?
- 8. Should we try to keep languages alive? Why or why not?
- 9. Why is it more difficult for adults than children to learn a second language?



#### Paraphrasing

Use your own words to say the ideas found in these sentences from the text. It is not necessary to use the same number of sentences. You may use more.

- 1. There are about 150 American Indian languages spoken today. These languages have many differences among them and have been divided into more than fifty language families.
- 2. Most children learn their first language easily—and sometimes other languages as well. Adults often must work harder at learning a second language.



#### Main Idea

- 1. Write a sentence for the main idea for paragraph 4 (lines 19–27).
- 2. Write a sentence for the main idea for paragraph 7 (lines 46–51).





| 1. | Half of the world's population speaks one of            |
|----|---|
|    | languages.  |
| 2. | We might lose half of the world's languages in the next |
|    | years.  |
| 3. | The word byte entered the English language in the       |
|    | year  |
| 4. | Maori is a language in the language family.             |
|    |   |



Word Forms: Active and Passive

In an active sentence, the subject performs (does) the action:

Computer specialists invented the word byte.

In a passive sentence, the subject receives the action. The passive is formed with the verb **to be** and the past participle. Sometimes the person (the agent) who performed the action is included in the sentence after the word **by**. The agent is not included if it is unknown or unimportant. Sometimes everyone knows who the agent is, so naming it is not necessary.

The word byte was invented by computer specialists.

About 150 American Indian **languages** are still spoken today. (Everyone knows they are spoken by people.)

American Indian **languages** have been divided into more than fifty language families. (The people who divided the languages into families are not important in this sentence.)



Choose a word form from the chart for each blank. Use the passive form where needed.

|    | Verb   | Noun                     | Adjective                             | Adverb                 |
|----|--|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. | instruct   | instruction              | instructive<br>instructor             |                        |
| 2. |  | (dis)honesty             | (dis)honest                           | (dis)honestly          |
| 3. | imagine  | imagination              | (un)imaginative                       | (un)imaginatively      |
| 4. | invent   | invention                | inventive<br>inventor                 | inventively            |
| 5. | interview  | interview<br>interviewer |                                       |                        |
| 6. | characterize   | character                | (un)characteristic                    | (un)characteristically |
| 7. |  | psychology               | psychological<br>psychologist         | psychologically        |
| 8. | beg  | beggar                   |                                       |                        |
| 9. | depend (on)  | dependability            | (un)dependable                        | dependably             |
| 2. | <ol> <li>The lecture on safe driving was very</li> <li> is an important characteristic for someone working in a bank.</li> </ol> |                          |                                       |                        |
| 3. |  |                          |                                       | I didn't know how      |
|    |  | end until the las        |                                       | 2 . 1                  |
|    | •  |                          | by Alexander (<br>ke some of the ques |                        |
| J. |  |                          |                                       |                        |
|    | asked him. He by a foreign journalist.   |                          |                                       |                        |
| 6. | 0 ,  |                          | sister. This was very                 | of                     |
|    | Marge; she is u  | sually nice to he        | r sister.                             |                        |
| 7. | Barbara is goin  | g to study               | The                                   | n she will work with   |
|    |  |                          | problems.                             |                        |
|    |  |                          | iend to lend him his                  |                        |
|    | -  |                          | -                                     | u know that he will do |
|    | what he says. You can him.   |                          |                                       |                        |



# **j** Noun Substitutes

| What does each nour | substitute stand for? |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
|---------------------|-----------------------|

- 1. page 134 line 15 it \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. page 134 line 19 **they** \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. page 134 line 30 they \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. page 135 line 61 **they**
- 5. page 135 line 68 **they**



#### **Articles**

Put articles in the blanks if they are necessary.

- 1. Some languages are used by millions of \_\_\_\_\_ people.
- 2. Many hearing-impaired people use sign languages, in which \_\_\_\_\_ gestures do the work of \_\_\_\_\_ sound system of \_\_\_\_\_ spoken languages.
- 3. Word order is more important in \_\_\_\_\_ English than it is in some other languages such as \_\_\_\_ Russian.
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_ English word *byte* was invented by \_\_\_\_\_ computer specialists in 1959.
- 5. \_\_\_\_\_ food in general.
- 6. Experts estimate that, on average, the world loses \_\_\_\_\_ language every two weeks.
- 7. Today, 50% of \_\_\_\_\_ world's population speaks one of \_\_\_\_ top fifteen languages.
- 8. Recent research indicates that \_\_\_\_\_ child's brain learns \_\_\_\_ new language differently than \_\_\_\_ adult's brain does.



# Two-Word Verbs

pick (someone) up = go somewhere (for example, with your car) to get someone stand for = be a symbol for (as in *U.S.* stands for *United States*) see (someone) off = go with someone to the place from which he or she is going to leave (for example, the airport) clean up = make clean and orderly (as in clean the house after a party or after some children had a lot of toys out) help out = help someone to do something \_\_\_\_\_ United Nations. 1. *U.N.* \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Tom had a big party. Afterwards, he had to \_\_\_\_\_\_ the house. Three of his friends stayed to \_\_\_\_\_\_. 3. Ali studied at New York University for five years. When he left, twenty people went to the airport to \_\_\_\_\_\_ 4. Let's go to the party together. I'll \_\_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ at 9:00.

## m

### **Guided Writing**

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. Compare your first language to the English language. How are they similar? How are they different?
- 2. What is easy about learning a second language? What is difficult?



# **Skyscrapers**

lesson

4



### Before You Read

- 1. What is the tallest building in your country? How old is it?
- 2. Why couldn't people build very tall buildings 100 years ago?
- 3. Do you think we should continue building tall buildings? Why or why not?



#### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. One of the tallest buildings in the late nineteenth century was the fourteen-**story** Pulitzer Building.
- 2. Cesar Pelli was the **architect** of the Petronas Towers. He worked on the building for several years.
- 3. A building with windows is more **pleasant** than a building without windows.
- 4. Architects had to find a way to prevent skyscrapers from moving too much in the wind. **In addition**, they wanted to make the buildings as beautiful as possible.
- 5. During World War Two, the **centers** of many cities in Europe were destroyed by bombs.

# 4 Skyscrapers



In 1998, the Petronas Towers in Malaysia became the tallest building in the world, **stealing** the number one spot from the Sears Tower in Chicago. Four years later, in 2003, the Taipei 101 building in Taiwan stole the **title**5 from the Petronas Towers. It seems that no **skyscraper** can hold the title of "the world's tallest building" for very long. But how high can a skyscraper go? Some experts believe that a mile-high building (5,280 feet, or 1,609 meters) is possible with the technology we

For centuries, the tallest buildings were made of stone. The base, or lower walls, of a tall building had to be very thick in order to support the upper walls. The taller the building was, the thicker the lower walls had to be. One of the tallest buildings in the late nineteenth

century was the fourteen-story Pulitzer Building in floor New York. To support the upper walls of the building, the stone walls at the base were nine feet (three meters) thick!

It took two important technological advancements 20 to make real skyscrapers possible. The first advancement was the mass production of iron and steel. The second was the production of lightweight metal beams. In the 1880s, architects started using these

people who design

25 beams to support the walls of buildings. These buildings didn't need thick walls at the base, so they could be much taller.

There were other advantages to building with metal beams. The building walls were thinner, and they could 30 have more windows, which made the rooms much more pleasant. With thin lower walls, there was more nice room for stores and offices on the ground floor. It was also faster to build with iron and steel than with stone.

However, there was still one problem. How would 35 people get to the top floor of a tall building? The solution, of course, was the elevator. Elisha Otis invented the safety elevator and first showed it to the **public** in 1853. By the 1880s, there were elevators run by electricity, which were fast and light enough to use in 40 skyscrapers. They were developed at just the right time.

There were other problems that architects and engineers had to solve. They had to figure out a way to get water to all the floors. They had to prevent the buildings from moving too much in the wind.

45 **In addition,** they wanted to make the buildings as beautiful as possible.

At the same time that architects were **designing** the first high-rise buildings, thousands of immigrants were entering the United States from Europe. These people 50 needed housing, and tall buildings could provide plenty of it in the cities. Before long, skyscrapers were rising in cities across the United States.

Over the years, many problems connected to high-rise buildings were solved, and buildings got taller

55 and taller. In 1909, a fifty-story building was built in

and



New York, and in 1913, one with sixty floors. In 1931, the Empire State Building in New York was finished; it was 102 stories high.

Throughout the twentieth century, other countries

60 were building skyscrapers too. In Europe, the **centers** of many cities had been destroyed by **bombs** during World War Two. City planners rebuilt many of the buildings **exactly** as they had been, but they also included high-rises in their plans. Most European cities today are a

65 mixture of old and modern buildings.

Tokyo did not have tall buildings for a long time because of **earthquakes**. Then engineers figured out how to keep a high-rise standing during an earthquake. Today, there are many tall buildings in Tokyo. In fact, there are tall buildings in cities throughout the world. As the population of a city increases, the number of high-rises increases because they take less **space**.

We have the technology for skyscrapers, but do we really need them or want them? With the invention of computers, a company doesn't need to have all its offices in one huge building. People can communicate by computer from offices spread out all over the city or even from their homes. And do we want 200-story buildings? Do people want to work and live that far above the ground? The architects and engineers who are planning these new skyscrapers have to think about these questions, or they may build buildings that no one will use.

sudden, violent movements of the earth



#### Vocabulary

| skyscraper   | advantages | title              | advancement       |
|--------------|------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| immigrants   | designs    | stories            | beams             |
| stole        | pleasant   | in addition        | architect         |
| . Someone    | his ca     | r during the night | . When he got up, |
| it was gone. |            |                    |                   |

2. There are many \_\_\_\_\_\_ to learning a second language.

1.



| 3.  | A high-rise buildii  | ng is also called a | a                    | <del></del> ,       |
|-----|----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| 4.  | The Nile River in A  | Africa holds the    |                      | of longest river in |
|     | the world.           |                     |                      |                     |
| 5.  | Thousands of         |                     | arrive in Austra     | alia from Asia and  |
|     | Europe every year    |                     |                      |                     |
| 6.  | What was the mos     | t important scien   | ntific               | in the              |
|     | twentieth century?   | ?                   |                      |                     |
| 7.  | In some skyscrape    | ers, the walls are  | made of steel        |                     |
|     | and glass.           |                     |                      |                     |
| 8.  | An architect         | t                   | ouildings.           |                     |
| 9.  | The Taipei 101 bui   | lding has 101       |                      |                     |
| 10. | Metal beams are u    | sed to build brid   | ges                  |                     |
|     | to skyscrapers.      |                     |                      |                     |
|     |                      |                     |                      |                     |
|     | Vocabulary           |                     |                      |                     |
|     | pleasant             | immigrant           | bomb                 | space               |
|     | in addition          | architect           | ,                    | earthquake          |
|     | advantage            | center              |                      | public              |
|     | One                  |                     |                      |                     |
| 2.  | We've had            | we                  | eather lately. It ha | as been warm        |
|     | and sunny.           |                     |                      |                     |
| 3.  | We tried to get twe  | •                   |                      | re wasn't           |
|     | enough               |                     |                      | a gradenjih vili i  |
|     | An                   | -                   | -                    |                     |
|     | The sun is at the    |                     |                      |                     |
|     | A famous             |                     | •                    |                     |
| 7.  | I don't know the _   |                     | 0                    | Sears Tower, but I  |
|     | think it's more than |                     |                      |                     |
|     | Another word for a   |                     | •                    |                     |
| 9.  | The lecture on mod   |                     | -                    | to the              |
|     |                      | -                   |                      |                     |
| 10. | There was an explo   | sion caused by a    |                      | and the same of     |
|     |                      |                     |                      |                     |



### Vocabulary Review: Definitions

Match the words with the definitions.

- 1. estimate
- a. better
- \_\_\_\_ 2. interior
- b. half of the Earth
- \_\_\_\_ 3. border
- c. get away from
- \_\_\_\_ 4. delay
- d. guess; predict
- \_\_\_ 5. blind
- e. not dangerous
- \_\_\_\_ 6. harmless
- f. to the shore
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. escape
- i. to the shore
- \_\_\_\_ 8. hemisphere
- h. not able to see

g. line between two countries

- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. ashore
- i. remote
- \_\_\_\_ 10. blizzard
- j. inside
- k. accident
- l. bad winter storm
- m. cause to be late



### Multiple Choice

- 1. The first skyscraper was built in \_\_\_\_\_
  - a. the late nineteenth century
  - b. 1853
  - c. Tokyo
- 2. It's impossible to build a skyscraper in stone because \_\_\_\_
  - a. the building walls would be too thin
  - b. the lower walls would be too thick
  - c. people couldn't get to the top of the building
- 3. Many European cities \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. were destroyed by earthquakes
  - b. have only new buildings
  - c. have both old and new buildings
- 4. A building with steel beams does not need \_\_\_\_\_
  - a. technology
  - b. thick walls
  - c. stores and offices on the first floor



- 5. The first building with sixty floors was built only \_\_\_\_\_ years after a fifty-story building.
  - a. 1913
  - b. four
  - c. eighteen
- 6. As population increases, \_\_\_\_\_ increases.
  - a. immigration
  - b. the number of skyscrapers
  - c. the number of old buildings
- 7. There weren't any skyscrapers in Tokyo for a long time because of \_\_\_\_\_
  - a. earthquakes
  - b. the population
  - c. immigration



### Comprehension Questions

- 1. What technological advancements made skyscrapers possible?
- 2. Why don't buildings with steel beams need thick lower walls?
- 3. Name an advantage of buildings with thin lower walls.
- 4. Why does the text say that elevators were invented at just the right time?
- 5. What effect did the arrival of thousands of immigrants in the United States have on skyscrapers?
- 6. What is the tallest building in the world today?
- 7. What is the advantage of high-rise buildings over lower buildings?
- 8. Why can Japan have skyscrapers today when it couldn't before?
- 9. Do you think people would use 200-story buildings? What is your reason?



#### Main Idea

- 1. Which sentence gives the main idea in paragraph 3 (lines 20–27)?
- 2. Which sentence gives the main idea in paragraph 6 (lines 41–46)?
- 3. Write a sentence that gives the main idea of paragraph 7 (lines 47–52).
- 4. Write a sentence that gives the main idea of the last paragraph.



# **8** Word Forms

These are some common verb prefixes and suffixes:

en-: encircle, enclose-en: darken, shorten

-ize: industrialize, publicize

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

|     | Verb       | Noun                     | Adjective                | Adverb              |
|-----|------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| 1.  | compare    | comparison               | comparative              | comparatively       |
| 2.  | please     | pleasure                 | (un)pleasant             | (un)pleasantly      |
| 3.  | add        | addition                 | additional               | additionally        |
| 4.  | advance    | advancement              | advanced                 |                     |
| 5.  |            | (dis)advantage           | (dis)advantageous        | (dis)advantageously |
| 6.  | prevent    | prevention               | preventive               |                     |
| 7.  | immigrate  | immigration<br>immigrant | immigration<br>immigrant |                     |
| 8.  | popularize | popularity               | popular                  | popularly           |
| 9.  | enclose    | enclosure                | enclosed                 |                     |
| 10. | strengthen | strength                 | strong                   | strongly            |

| 1. | Spanish spelling is _                                    | easy to learn. By                                  |  |
|----|--|--|--|
|    |  | , English spelling is difficult.                   |  |
| 2. | It was a   | to meet you.                                       |  |
| 3. | People who are afraid to fly don't like being closed in. |  |  |
|    | ,  | , they sometimes fear heights and don't understand |  |
|    | the technology of flyi                                   | ng.  |  |
| 4. | What can you do to _                                     | in your profession?                                |  |
| 5. | It is  | to learn English. Are there any                    |  |
|    |  | to learning it?                                    |  |



| 6.    | Providing medicine is better than helping people                |
|-------|---|
|       | after they are sick.  |
| 7.    | The office is open from 9:00 to 5:00.                           |
| 8.    | is very important to teenagers.                                 |
| 9.    | The farmer put his sheep in an for the night.                   |
| 10.   | I agree with you  |
| h     | Two-Word Verbs: Review  |
| Put   | the right word in each blank.                                   |
| 1.    | There was a long line waiting to check at the airport.          |
| 2.    | A large truck broke on the highway.                             |
| 3.    | Alice goes to the gym every weekend to work                     |
|       | Do you have enough money to live?                               |
| 5.    | Could you help me this weekend?                                 |
| 6.    | Fixing my car turned an all-day job.                            |
|       | Mr. Brown is working too hard and has to slow                   |
|       | Jean had to drop of school and get a job.                       |
|       | Children don't like to put their toys when they finish playing. |
|       | Bob was an hour late because he ran gas.                        |
| i     | Articles  |
|       | 7 it delects  |
| Put   | articles in the blanks if they are needed.                      |
| 1. In | n 1998, Petronas Towers in Malaysia became tallest              |
| b     | uilding in world.   |
| 2. F  | or centuries, tallest buildings were made of stone.             |
| 3. In | 1880s,architects started using these beams to support           |
| _     | walls of buildings.   |
| 4. E  | lisha Otis inventedsafety elevator and first showed it to       |
| p     | ublic in 1853.  |
| 5. Ir | 1931,Empire State Building inNew York was finished; it          |
| W     | ras 102 stories high.   |
| 6. W  | 7ithinvention ofcomputers,company doesn't                       |
| n     | eed to have all its offices in one huge building.               |
| Less  | on 4: Skyscrapers — 151   |



### Summarizing

Write a sentence to summarize each of these paragraphs.

- 1. Paragraph 1 (lines 1–10)
- 2. Paragraph 2 (lines 11–19)
- 3. Paragraph 5 (lines 34-40)



### **Guided Writing**

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. Do you think we should continue to build higher and higher buildings? Why or why not?
- 2. Describe a skyscraper you have seen. Be very specific and give complete details.



## **Left-Handedness**

lesson

5



### Before You Read

- 1. How many people in the picture are writing with their left hand?
- 2. Are you left-handed, or is anyone else in your family left-handed?
- 3. What advantages and disadvantages are there to being left-handed?



#### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. Do you prefer to write with your left hand or your right hand?
- 2. In the past, left-handed people were often forced to use their right hand.
- 3. One part of the brain controls how a person uses the five senses—sight, hearing, smell, taste, and touch.
- 4. Some left-handed children see letters and words **backwards**. They read *d* for *b* and *was* for *saw*.
- 5. In the 1930s, some teachers started permitting schoolchildren to write with their left hand.

# **Left-Handedness**



Do you <u>prefer</u> to write with your left hand? If you do, you are one of the millions of "lefties" in the world. There would be even more left-handed people in the world if many people weren't forced to use their 5 right hand.

To understand left-handedness, it is **necessary** to look at the brain. The brain is divided into two hemispheres. In most right-handers, the left hemisphere is the center of language and logical thinking. This is where they do their 10 math problems and memorize vocabulary. The right

hemisphere controls how they understand broad, general ideas and how they respond to the five senses—sight, hearing, smell, taste, and touch.

The left hemisphere of the brain controls the right 15 side of the body, and the right hemisphere controls the left side. Both sides of the body receive the same information from the brain because both hemispheres

like better

covering many



154



are connected. However, in right-handed people, the left hemisphere is stronger. In left-handed people, it is the right hemisphere that is stronger.

Different handedness causes differences in people. Although the left hemisphere controls language in most right-handers, 40% of left-handers have the language center in the right hemisphere. The other 60% use the left side of the brain or both sides for language.

Lefties prefer not only the left hand but also the left foot. They prefer using the left foot to kick a ball because their whole body is "left-handed."

There has been an increasing amount of research on
handedness. For example, one psychologist says that
left-handers are more likely to have good imaginations.
They are also more likely than right-handers to enjoy
swimming underwater. That is because left-handers can
adjust more easily to seeing underwater.

change

Some left-handed children see letters and words backwards. They read *d* for *b* and *was* for *saw*. Another problem is <u>stuttering</u>. Some left-handed children start to stutter when they are forced to write with their right hand. Queen Elizabeth II's father, King George VI, had to change from left- to right-handed writing when he was a child, and he stuttered all his life.

repeating words or parts of words

Anthropologists think that the earliest people were about 50% right-handed and 50% left-handed because ancient tools from before 8000 B.C. could be used with either hand. But by 3500 B.C., the tools, which were better designed, were for use with only one hand. More than half of them were for right-handed people.

people who study different cultures

The first writing system, invented by the
Phoenicians (3000–2000 B.C.) in the Middle East, went
from right to left. The Greeks began to write from left to
right around the fifth century B.C. because they
increasingly believed that right was "good" and left was
"bad." As time passed, more and more customs

experience difficulties or pain

connected left with "bad." This belief is still common in many countries today, and left-handed people <u>suffer</u>



As the centuries passed and **education** spread to more levels of society, more and more people became
literate. As more children learned to write, more of them were forced to write with their right hand. In the 1930s, some teachers finally started **permitting** schoolchildren to write with their left hand. In some countries, however, left-handed children are still forced to write with their right hand.

Many famous people were left-handed. Napoleon, Michelangelo, Beethoven, Isaac Newton, and Albert Einstein were all left-handed. Alexander the Great and Queen Victoria of England were left-handed too. Paul McCartney of the Beatles plays the guitar the **opposite** way from other guitarists because he is left-handed.

Are you left-handed even though you write with your right hand? Take this test to find out. Draw a circle first with one hand and then with the other. If you draw the circles clockwise (the direction the hands of a clock go in), you are probably left-handed. If you draw them counterclockwise (in the other direction), you are right-handed. The test does not always work, and some people draw one circle in one direction and the other circle in the other direction. But don't worry if you are left-handed. You are in good company.

with a lot of other good people

# **a** Vocabulary

| necessary    | broader             | backwards | stutter |
|--------------|---------------------|-----------|---------|
| senses       | responding          | force     | prefer  |
| memorize     | tool                | adjust    | likely  |
| The main str | poets of a city are |           | than t  |

- 1. The main streets of a city are \_\_\_\_\_\_ than the side streets Broadway is a common street name.
- 2. A left-handed person who is forced to write with the right hand may begin to \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 3. A car can go forward and \_\_\_\_\_



| 4.   | . Did you                        | any p     | oems whe        | n you v | were a child?  |
|------|----------------------------------|-----------|-----------------|---------|--|
| 5.   | . Do you                         | to have   | e coffee or     | tea in  | the morning?   |
| 6.   | A blind person is lacking one    | of the    |                 |         | · Develor  |
| 7.   | Some students are shy about      |           | pull-           | to      | questions in class.  |
| 8.   | As you drive off the highway,    | you n     | eed to          |         | 100  |
|      | your speed.                      |           |                 |         |  |
| 9.   | Many businesspeople agree th     | nat it's  |                 | La res  | to know  |
|      | English today.                   |           |                 |         |  |
| 10.  | There are no clouds in the sky   | today     | , so it's not   | 0000    | A readments  |
|      | to rain.                         |           |                 |         |  |
|      |                                  |           |                 |         |  |
|      | Vocabulary                       |           |                 |         |  |
| 9998 | au Carina ta ala                 |           | forms           |         | anthum alogist   |
|      | suffering tools<br>broad respond |           | force<br>permit |         | anthropologist counterclockwise  |
|      | education opposite               |           | clockwise       |         |  |
| 1.   | A mechanic cannot fix a car w    | ithout    |                 |         |  |
|      | If you want to get a good        |           |                 |         |  |
|      | to school?                       |           |                 |         |  |
| 3.   | The hands of a clock move in a   | a         |                 | (       | direction.   |
| 4.   | Parents should not               | A STATE   | their c         | hildre  | n to swim in the pool  |
|      | without an adult there.          |           |                 |         | day area di  |
| 5.   | We had lots of                   | 1         | this weeke      | nd. My  | relatives and my   |
|      | wife's relatives all came over.  |           |                 |         | the fame of the first  |
| 6.   | If you turn to the left, you are | turning   | g in a          |         | direction.   |
| 7.   | The of no                        | orth is s | south.          |         |  |
| 8.   | A person who studies ancient     | culture   | es is called    | an      | Contraction of the contraction o |
|      | He tried to                      |           |                 |         |  |
| 10.  | During a war, there is a tremer  | ndous     | amount of       |         |  |
|      |                                  |           |                 |         |  |



### Vocabulary Review\_

|     | sticks out               | borrow        | mates                         | nests           |
|-----|--------------------------|---------------|-------------------------------|-----------------|
|     | once in a while          | specialist    | exactly                       | crash           |
|     | fear .                   | tunnel        | loss                          | terrified       |
| 1.  | Do you know              |               | how tall you are?             |                 |
| 2.  | In spring, animals sea   | rch for       | el laborito de Gra            |                 |
| 3.  | Spiders and birds buil   | d             |                               |                 |
| 4.  | A roadrunner's head      | F71 L-11-101  | straight in from              | nt when it runs |
| 5.  | The Simplon              |               | goes under the Alps be        | etween Italy    |
|     | and Switzerland.         |               |                               |                 |
| 6.  | Being afraid to fly is a | n illogical _ |                               |                 |
| 7.  | We heard a loud          |               | and knew that then            | e had been      |
|     | an accident.             |               |                               |                 |
| 8.  | You can                  | my ł          | oooks, but please don't       | forget to       |
|     | return them.             |               |                               |                 |
| 9.  | Would you be             |               | to meet Frankenstein          | ?               |
| 10. | Most people fly only _   | <del></del>   |                               |                 |
|     | 1999/                    |               |                               |                 |
| d   | True/False/Not En        | ough Infor    | mation_                       |                 |
|     | 1 (                      | 1.6.11        | nd for                        |                 |
| _   | 1. Some Eskimos a        |               |                               | a Jackey ex 3   |
|     | · ·                      | ders do calcu | llus with the left hemis      | phere of        |
|     | the brain.               |               |                               | wanted orders   |
| _   |                          |               | tiful building, most of       | them use the    |
|     | right hemispher          | e of the brai | n.<br>Walio i waran an huna i |                 |
|     | 4. The right hemis       | phere contro  | ols the right side of the     | body.           |
|     | 5. Most people in        | the world us  | e the left hemisphere fo      | or language.    |
|     | 6. Left-handedness       | s can cause c | children to see letters ba    | ackwards.       |
|     | 7. It is easier to wr    | ite from left | to right.                     |                 |
|     | 8. Left-handed peo       | ople are mor  | e intelligent than right-     | handers.        |



### Comprehension Questions

- 1. What does the right hemisphere of the brain control?
- 2. Which hemisphere is stronger in left-handed people?
- 3. Why do lefties prefer to kick with the left foot?
- 4. What problems do lefties have in using machines?
- 5. When do some left-handers start to stutter?
- 6. Why do anthropologists think that the earliest people were equally divided between left- and right-handers?
- 7. Why did the Greeks start writing from left to right?
- 8. What does "You are in good company" mean?
- 9. How can you tell if a 2-year-old child is left-handed?
- 10. Are you left-handed?



#### Main Idea

- 1. What sentence is the main idea for paragraph 4 (lines 21–25)?
- 2. What sentence is the main idea for paragraph 6 (lines 29–34)?
- 3. Write a sentence for the main idea in paragraph 9 (lines 49–57).
- 4. Write the main idea of the last paragraph.



#### Word Forms

|    | Verb        | Noun                 | Adjective         | Adverb             |
|----|-------------|----------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. | communicate | communication(s)     | (un)communicative |                    |
| 2. | exist       | existence            | (non)existent     |                    |
| 3. | prefer      | preference           | (un)preferential  | (un)preferentially |
| 4. | divide      | division             | (in)divisible     |                    |
| 5. | force       | force                | forceful          | forcefully         |
| 6. |             |                      | (un)common        | (un)commonly       |
| 7. | respond     | response             | (un)responsive    |                    |
| 8. | permit      | permission<br>permit | (im)permissible   | (im)permissibly    |
| 9. |             | reality              | (un)real          | really             |



159

|      |   | ş.   |                     |                  |
|------|---|--|---------------------|------------------|
|      | oose a word form from th<br>I singular or plural nout |  | ce below. Use the r | ight verb forms  |
|      | I tried to get the inform                             | And the same of th |                     | but he was       |
|      | Frank told everyone tl                                |  | irge company, bu    | it the company   |
|      | Professors should not they like.                      | give   | treatment to        | o the students   |
| 4. 7 | Ten is not evenly                                     | by 3.  |                     |                  |
|      | ohn was<br>were so bad.                               | to leave the   | university becau    | se his grades    |
| 6. I | t is  | _ believed that girls  | learn languages f   | aster than boys. |
|      | The injured person<br>well now.                       | to   | the doctor's trea   | tment. She is    |
| 8. Y | You cannot build a hou                                | use in this city withou  | ıt a building       |                  |
| 9. I | t seemed  | to Abdullah  | that he had final   | lly finished his |
|      | loctorate degree and v                                |  |                     | STATISTICS T     |
|      | Missing Words   |  |                     |                  |
| Fill | in the missing words.                                 |  |                     |                  |
| 1    | u   | nderstand left-hande<br>ook  |                     | sary             |
| 2. T | he brain  |  |                     | two              |



hemispheres.

| 3.  | Both sides of          | b                      | ody receive th   | ne same inforr          | nation      |
|-----|------------------------|------------------------|------------------|-------------------------|-------------|
|     |                        | _ the brain becau      | use both hemi    | spheres                 |             |
|     |                        | _ connected.           |                  | er don <del>10</del> es |             |
| 4.  | There has been         |                        |                  |                         |             |
|     |                        | research               |                  | _ handedness            |             |
| 5.  | But                    | 3500 B.C.,             | the tools, which | ch                      | -           |
|     | better designed, we    | ere for use            |                  | only one har            | nd.         |
| 6.  |                        | $_{-}$ the centuries p | assed and edu    | acation spread          | l           |
|     |                        |                        |                  |                         |             |
|     |                        | _ people became        | malen, myd ar    | ign and made            |             |
| 986 |                        |                        |                  |                         |             |
|     | Connecting W           | ords                   |                  |                         |             |
|     |                        | - Allipetries          |                  |                         |             |
|     | it after, before, when |                        |                  |                         |             |
| 1.  | I'll give you the boo  | ok                     | I see yo         | ou tomorrow.            |             |
| 2.  | People who are afra    | id of flying can c     | control their fe | ar                      |             |
|     | they take a class.     |                        |                  |                         |             |
| 3.  | The Garbage Projec     | t has been in exis     | tence            |                         | 1973.       |
| 4.  | Toronto knew that is   | had done a good        | d job recycling  |                         | the         |
|     | Garbage Project pro    | ved that the amo       | unt of its garba | age had becom           | ne smaller. |
| 5.  | Sometimes              | the                    | roadrunner ge    | ets a piece of r        | meat, it    |
|     | takes it back to its n | est.                   |                  |                         |             |
| 6.  | There were no skyse    | crapers                | 18               | 384.                    |             |
|     |                        |                        |                  |                         | ed          |
|     | the expedition.        |                        |                  |                         |             |
| 8.  |                        | _ the 1930s, teach     | ers forced all   | children to w           | rite with   |
|     | their right hand.      |                        |                  |                         |             |
|     | Ü                      |                        |                  |                         |             |
|     |                        |                        |                  |                         |             |





### Finding the Reason

Write the reason for each statement.

1. Many left-handers have to use their right hand.

2. For some people, the center of language is in the right hemisphere.

3. Both sides of the body receive the same information.

4. Lefties prefer kicking with the left foot.

5. King George VI stuttered.

6. Anthropologists think that more than 50% of people were right-handed by 3500 B.C.

7. Paul McCartney plays the guitar differently.



### **Guided Writing**

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. Write a short history of left-handedness. Start with the earliest people and continue until today.
- 2. Your 3-year-old child is left-handed. Your friend thinks that you should teach the child to use the right hand instead. What are you going to do and why?



# Video Highlights

# **a** Before You Watch

- 1. How much do you remember about skyscrapers? Work with a partner to recall the following information from Lesson 4.
  - a. The building material that made tall buildings possible:
  - b. Two problems that architects and engineers had to solve:
- 2. Read these comments from the video "Green Skyscraper":

"Lights, tourists, traffic. Times Square is not where you would expect to find an environmental experiment in progress."

"But, slowly rising is a forty-eight-story building designed to save energy and other natural resources."

Then discuss the questions below with your partner.

- a. What do you know about New York? List three facts.
- b. Why do you think this new building is called a "green skyscraper"?

# **b** As You Watch

Listen for information that will help you complete this list:

#### Ways the Green Skyscraper Will Save Energy

- 1. It will use solar panels to generate clean \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 2. Extra insulation will be used to keep heat (or cool air)
- 3. Oversized \_\_\_\_\_ will let in light, but not too much heat.



163



#### After You Watch

1. Check the facts. Is the underlined information in the following sentences correct? If not, change the sentence to make it correct. Write your correction above the mistake. If the information is already correct, do not change the sentence.

40%

Example: It's going to cut energy use by 80% over a conventional building.

- a. The builder, architects, and suppliers communicate via <u>airmail</u> and the Internet.
- b. We believe we've eliminated about 40,000 sheets of paper.
- c. The building was designed to cut down on the use of <u>glass</u> and other energy-intensive building materials.
- d. Keeping buildings running takes up about <u>one half</u> of the energy used in America each year.
- 2. Why is the statement below important? Discuss it with a partner. Share your explanation with the class.

"The building is going to cut energy use by 40% over a conventional building . . . . That's significant, particularly in a building this big. That's a lot of carbon dioxide  $(CO_2)$  that won't be going into the atmosphere."



# **Activity Page**

#### **Familiar Phrases**

A phrase is a group of words that has a special meaning. Use this key to figure out the familiar phrases.

| A | В | C | D | Ε | F | G | Н | Ι | J | K | L | M | N | O | P | Q | R | S | Т | U | V | W | X | Y | Z |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Z | Y | X | W | V | U | T | S | R | Q | P | O | N | M | L | K | J | Ι | Η | G | F | E | D | C | В | A |

Write the phrase on the top line, and then use it in a sentence of your own on the bottom line.

| _, |   | • |   |   | npa |    |       | 1 1   |      | •    | ,   | . 10 | ., .  | 8 7   | M   | D |  |
|----|---|---|---|---|-----|----|-------|-------|------|------|-----|------|-------|-------|-----|---|--|
|    | _ | _ | _ |   | _   | _  | , you | ı arı | e in | g000 | con | ıpan | y wit | h fie | 5h. |   |  |
| •  | G | Z | K |   | В   | L  | F I   |       | U    | LI   | G   |      |       |       |     |   |  |
|    |   |   |   |   |     |    | -12   |       |      | 19   |     | Т    |       | 7     |     |   |  |
| •  | Z |   | S | R | Т   | S- | I R   | Н     | V    | Y    | FI  | R O  | W     | R I   | МТ  |   |  |
|    | _ |   |   |   |     |    |       |       |      |      | 71  |      |       |       |     |   |  |
|    | L | M | Χ | V |     | R  | M     |       | Z    | Ι    | SR  | 0.0  | V     |       |     |   |  |



# **Dictionary Page**

### **Understanding Grammar Codes**

1. You can use your dictionary to learn about regular verbs.

| Ending | Form                  | Example                                      |
|--------|-----------------------|--|
| -ed    | simple past           | They designed the building to save energy.   |
| -ed    | past participle       | The building was designed to save energy.    |
| -ing   | present participle    | The architects are designing a new building. |
| -s     | third person singular | He designs buildings for a living.           |

Your dictionary also gives you the forms of all irregular verbs. Look at this entry for the verb *swim*. Label each of its main forms.

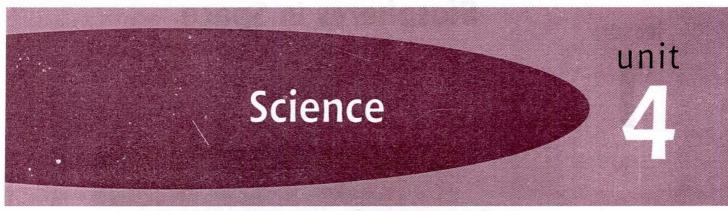
swim /swim/ v. wam /swæm/, swum /swam/, swimming, swims 1 [I] to move through water by moving parts of the body (legs, arms, fins, tails): He swam across the river and back again.

past simple

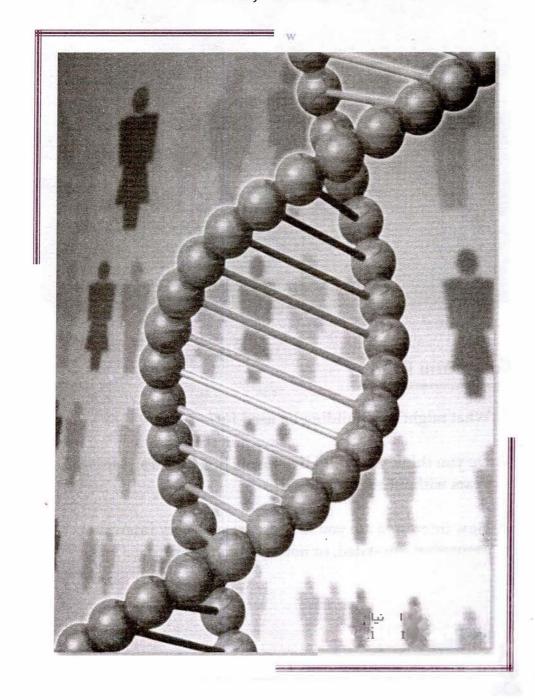
2. Complete these sentences with the correct form of the verb in parentheses. Use your dictionary to check for the correct spelling.

Example: The audience (clap) <u>clapped</u> their hands and stamped their feet.

- a. The Taipei 101 building (steal) \_\_\_\_\_\_ the title of "tallest building in the world."
- b. I (lose) \_\_\_\_\_ my wallet somewhere.
- c. Many left-handers (excel) \_\_\_\_\_\_ in tennis, baseball, and swimming.

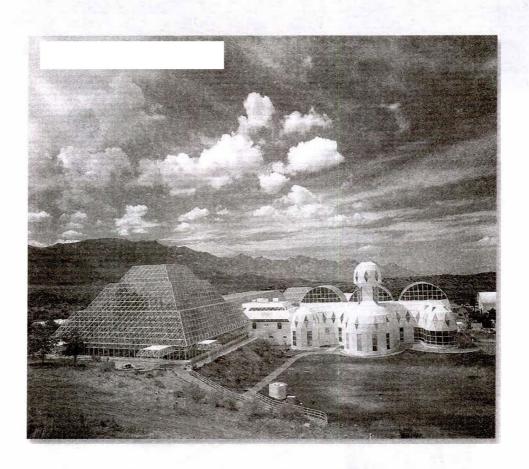


Minds are like parachutes. They only function when they are open.
—Sir James Dewar



# **Biospheres in Space**

lesson



## **Before You Read**

- 1. What might this building be used for?
- 2. Do you think you could live inside this building for two years without ever leaving it?
- 3. How interested are you in space travel—very interested, somewhat interested, or not very interested?



#### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

- 1. Will it ever be possible for people to live on faraway planets such as Mars and Jupiter?
- 2. Scientists at the Environmental Research Laboratory are doing experiments on the Earth's environment.
- 3. A biosphere will need **bacteria** or something else to take care of the wastes.
- 4. **So far,** only a few experimental biospheres have been built on Earth.

# Biospheres in Space



Will it ever be possible for people to live on faraway <a href="planets">planets</a> such as Mars? In the past, colonies in space were possible only in science fiction stories. Today, however, we are experimenting with ways to build real space colonies. Many scientists actually consider it possible that people will live far from the Earth sometime in the future.



The Environmental Research Laboratory at the University of Arizona is one place that designs biospheres (*bio* means *life*, and a *sphere* is a *circle*, like a ball) which could be used to live on other planets. Biospheres are complete, enclosed environments where people can be born, live their whole lives, and die without returning to the Earth. To be successful, a biosphere has to have a perfect **balance** among

everything within it—the plants, the animals (including humans), and the chemical **elements**. Specialists and experts from many different fields are needed to work on these **complex projects**.

complicated



making

Building a greenhouse for growing plants in winter is the first step in <u>creating</u> a biosphere. A greenhouse is a closed environment except for the sun's heat entering through the glass or plastic. Of course, there is a water system from outside, and people bring in nutrients for the plants and take out the waste material.

A biosphere in space will have to have its own system to provide water that can be used and reused. It will need **bacteria** or something else to take care of the wastes. Everything must be perfectly balanced, or else the whole system will break down.

The Earth itself is the best example of a real biosphere. Nothing important enters except sunlight, and nothing leaves as waste except some heat. Everything in the Earth's environment needs to be in balance. If we destroy that balance, the system will break down.

There are several reasons for building biospheres.

One reason is to help out when there is an energy shortage. Dr. Gerard K. O'Neill, a famous **physicist** from Princeton University, has said that in the future we will have **satellites** in space to produce **solar** energy and send it to the Earth. It will be too expensive to continually send people and materials to the satellites, so biospheres will be necessary. He thinks that 10,000 people could live in a space colony sometime in the future. There is another interesting reason to build biospheres. We can use them to do all kinds of research about our own environment and how it works. By studying biospheres, we can understand better what

So far, only a few experimental biospheres have been built on Earth. One is in Oracle, Arizona, near the University of Arizona. In 1991, four men and four women tried to live inside the biosphere without getting anything from outside. During the experiment, things got out of balance. Oxygen and carbon dioxide levels fell, and the crew had to get help and supplies

will happen as humans destroy tropical forests, as they create more **carbon dioxide** by burning fuel, and as they

pollute the oceans and the air.



of the sun

until now

from outside. In space, people living in a biosphere would not be able to do this.

Learning how a biosphere works is one of the most important things we can do. The information we get from biospheres may **keep** us **from** destroying our own environment. This information will also help us to travel where once only science fiction could go.

| 2  | Vocabulary   |   |
|----|--|---|
|    | colony planet<br>solar satellite<br>physicist bacteria | project science fiction<br>complex balance<br>consider carbon dioxide |
| 1. | The Earth is a   | It is part of the   |
|    | system.  |   |
| 2. | can caus   | se disease. They also destroy wastes.                                 |
| 3. | Ants live together in a                                |   |
| 4. | Julia likes to read                                    |   |
| 5. | It's difficult toare walking.                          | a book on your head while you   |
| 6. | 0  | is to build a dam to store  |
| 7. | Another word for complicated                           | is  |
| 8. | We must  | the advantages and the disadvantages                                  |
|    | hefore we start the project                            | 0.00  |

# **b** Vocabulary

|  | create  | satellite   | bacteria  | carbon dioxide   |
|--|---|---|---|--|
|  | so far  | keep  | laboratory  | elements   |
|  | balance   | project   | physicist   | consider   |
| 1.   | CO <sub>2</sub> stands for  |   | <u></u>   |  |
| 2.   | Gold (Au), oxy  | gen (O), and uran   | ium (U) are all   |  |
| 3.   | Destroying rain   | n forests can   | pr  | oblems for the   |
|  | whole world.  |   |   |  |
| 4.   | Scientists in a   |   | _ often wear whi  | te coats.  |
| 5.   |   | , there are no  | o buildings over 12   | 20 stories high.   |
| 6.   | Α   | teaches or  | r does research in  | physics.   |
| 7.   | Before the large  | e increase in popul   | lation, there was a   |  |
|  | between the ne  | eds of the people a   | and what the land   | could produce.   |
| 8.   | Much internati  | onal communicati  | on is now done by   |  |
| 9.   | Designing a spa   | ace colony would  | be a difficult  |  |
| 10.  | They locked the   | e door to   | peopl   | le from coming in.   |
| 11.  | I   | you to be a   | good friend.  |  |
| Server   | <b>表</b>  |   |   |  |
|  | Vocabulary  | Review  |   |  |
| Series de  | in .  | Person.   |   |  |
|  | diet  | tools   | clockwise   | story  |
|  |   | 1.  |   | ,  |
|  | takes off   | dispose of  | harmful   | phobia   |
|  | straighten  | position  | harmful<br>permission   | phobia<br>remained   |
| 1.   | straighten<br>You need to tur   | position  | harmful<br>permission   | phobia   |
|  | straighten You need to tur the door.  | position $^{\circ}$ n the door knob $^{-}$  | harmful<br>permission   | phobia<br>remained<br>_ in order to open                       |
| 2.   | straighten You need to tur the door. You should turr  | position on the door knob _ on off your cell phor   | harmful permission  | phobia<br>remained<br>_ in order to open                       |
| 2.   | straighten You need to tur the door. You should turr It's not healthy   | position  In the door knob _  In off your cell phor  to live on a                                 | harmful permission  ne before the plane of j  | phobia remained in order to open  unk food.                    |
| <ol> <li>2.</li> <li>3.</li> <li>4.</li> </ol>             | Straighten You need to tur the door. You should turr It's not healthy If they                                   | position  In the door knob  In off your cell phor  Ito live on a  Ithe ro                         | harmful permission  ne before the plane of joad, people will dr                                 | phobia remained in order to open  unk food.                    |
| <ol> <li>2.</li> <li>3.</li> <li>4.</li> </ol>             | Straighten You need to tur the door. You should turr It's not healthy If they                                   | position  In the door knob _  In off your cell phor  to live on a                                 | harmful permission  ne before the plane of joad, people will dr                                 | phobia remained in order to open  unk food.                    |
| <ol> <li>2.</li> <li>3.</li> <li>4.</li> <li>5.</li> </ol> | Straighten You need to tur the door. You should turr It's not healthy If they Smoking is His office is on       | position In the door knob In off your cell phor Ito live on a the ro                              | harmful permission  ne before the plane of j  oad, people will dr  to your health. oor of a     | phobia remained in order to open  unk food.                    |
| <ol> <li>3.</li> <li>4.</li> <li>6.</li> </ol>             | Straighten You need to tur the door. You should turr It's not healthy If they Smoking is His office is on forty | position  In the door knob _  In off your cell phore to live on a the row the twenty-sixth flegal | harmful permission  ne before the plane of j  oad, people will dr  to your health. oor of a ng. | phobia remained in order to open  unk food. rive a lot faster. |
| <ol> <li>3.</li> <li>4.</li> <li>6.</li> </ol>             | Straighten You need to tur the door. You should turr It's not healthy If they Smoking is His office is on forty | position In the door knob In off your cell phor Ito live on a the ro                              | harmful permission  ne before the plane of j  oad, people will dr  to your health. oor of a ng. | phobia remained in order to open  unk food. rive a lot faster. |

| 8.   | You need to get special  | to go inside the laboratory.    |
|------|--|---------------------------------|
| 9.   | How would people in a space colony   | their garbage?                  |
| 10.  | Only three people  | in the theater to see the whole |
|      | movie. Everyone else left early.   |                                 |
|      |  |                                 |
| d    | Multiple Choice  |                                 |
|      | That apre of the control of the cont |                                 |
| 1.   | Fiction is   |                                 |
|      | a. true  |                                 |
|      | b. imaginative   | *                               |
|      | c. boring  | = 12 2 2                        |
|      | Biospheres are complicated projects beca<br>a. everything must be perfectly balance  |                                 |
|      | b. scientists don't know what materials  |                                 |
|      | c. people from different professions wo  |                                 |
|      | The experimental biosphere in Arizona .  |                                 |
|      | a. was very successful   |                                 |
| 1    | b. had serious problems  |                                 |
| (    | c. stayed in perfect balance   |                                 |
|      | Biospheres in space could support  | _ people.                       |
| _    | a. two or three  |                                 |
|      | o. ten   |                                 |
|      | 2. 10,000  |                                 |
|      | A greenhouse   |                                 |
|      | a. is a partly enclosed environment<br>b. is a biosphere   |                                 |
|      | c. supports plant life independently   |                                 |
|      | might take care of the wastes in a   | a biosphere.                    |
|      | a. A water system  |                                 |
| ŀ    | o. Balanced nutrients  |                                 |
| C    | e. Bacteria  |                                 |
| 7. I | Or. O'Neill thinks that  |                                 |
|      | a. satellites can produce solar energy   |                                 |
|      | o. about ten people could take care of a s   |                                 |
| C    | c. we need a space colony to study the s   | olar system                     |
|      |  |                                 |



## Comprehension Questions

- 1. Why is it a complex project to create a biosphere?
- 2. How is a greenhouse different from a biosphere?
- 3. Explain why the Earth is a biosphere.
- 4. How does Dr. O'Neill think that we will solve the energy shortage?
- 5. Why can we learn about our environment from a biosphere?
- 6. What happened when people moved into the Arizona biosphere?
- 7. Would you like to live in a biosphere on Mars? Why or why not?



#### Main Idea

- 1. What is the main idea of paragraph 4 (lines 30–35)?
- 2. What is the main idea of paragraph 5 (lines 36–51)?
- 3. Write a sentence that gives the main idea for paragraph 6 (lines 52–60).



## Cause and Effect

What is the cause of each of these effects?

| Cause | Effect  |
|-------|---|
| 1.    | People can live their whole lives in biospheres.              |
| 2.    | The whole system might break down.                            |
| 3.    | The same water must be used and reused.                       |
| 4.    | We will need solar energy.                                    |
| 5.    | A biosphere will be necessary to run solar energy production. |
| 6.    | We create more carbon dioxide.                                |



## Word Forms: Verbs and Nouns

Many English words are used as both a verb and a noun. Use ten of these examples in sentences, using some verbs and some nouns.

| Verb    | Noun    |
|---------|---------|
| balance | balance |
| crash   | crash   |
| force   | force   |
| design  | design  |
| escape  | escape  |
| party   | party   |
| fear    | fear    |
| harm    | harm    |
| bother  | bother  |
| whistle | whistle |
| knock   | knock   |



## Noun Substitutes

What do these noun substitutes stand for?

- 1. page 170 line 26 it \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 2. page 170 line 41 it \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. page 170 line 46 them \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. page 170 line 47 it \_\_\_\_\_
- 5. page 170 line 53 **one** \_\_\_\_\_



## Articles

Put articles in the blanks if they are necessary.

| 1. | Environmental Research Laboratory at          | University of |
|----|---|---------------|
|    | Arizona is one place that designs biospheres. |               |

- 2. \_\_\_\_\_ greenhouse is \_\_\_\_\_ closed environment except for \_\_\_\_\_ sun's heat entering through the glass.
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_ Earth itself is \_\_\_\_\_ best example of \_\_\_\_\_ real biosphere.



| 4. | Everything in Earth's environment needs to be in balance    |
|----|---|
| 5. | So far, only few experimental biospheres have been built on |
|    | Earth.  |
| 6. | Oxygen levels fell, and crew had to get help and            |
|    | supplies from outside.                                      |
| 7. | Learning how biosphere works is one of most important       |
|    | things we can do.   |
|    |   |

# **k** Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. Should we build biospheres? Why or why not?
- 2. You are living in a biosphere on Mars. Describe your life.

## **Earthquakes**

lesson

2



## Before You Read

- 1. What happened in this picture?
- 2. Have you ever felt an earthquake?
- 3. What should you do if you feel an earthquake?



#### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

- 1. A large movement causes a violent earthquake, but a small movement causes a **mild** one.
- 2. When the ocean waves hit land, they flood coastal areas.
- 3. During the earthquake, bridges fell and cars were **crushed**.
- 4. Estimates of deaths ranged from 250,000 to 695,000.
- 5. **Seismology** is the study of earthquakes.

# 2 Earthquakes



What causes earthquakes? The outer <u>layer</u> of the Earth is divided into huge pieces that are constantly moving. When two of the pieces move against each other or move in opposite directions, an earthquake happens. A large movement causes a violent earthquake, and a small movement causes a **mild** one. There are thousands of earthquakes every year, but most of them are very small.



layer

The place where an earthquake begins is called the

epicenter. When an earthquake happens, <u>vibrations</u> move
outward from the epicenter. These rolling vibrations are
called seismic waves. Usually, an earthquake is only
strong enough to cause damage near its epicenter.

shaking movements

When the epicenter of an earthquake is at the bottom of the ocean, it can create huge sea waves as tall as fifteen meters. These waves cross the ocean in several hours. Rushing toward land, they destroy small islands and ships in their path. When they hit land, they <u>flood</u> coastal areas far from the epicenter of the earthquake. In 1868, a wave reached 4.5 kilometers inland in Peru.

cover with water

After an earthquake happens, people can die from lack of food, water, and medical supplies. The amount



of destruction caused by an earthquake depends on where it happens, what time it happens, and how strong it is. It also depends on the types of buildings in the area, the soil conditions, and the size of the population. Of the thousands of earthquakes in the world each year, only about 1 in 500 causes damage.

In 1556, an earthquake in northern China killed 830,000 people—the most in history. At that time, there was no way to measure its strength. In 1935, scientists started using the Richter Scale to measure seismic waves. A seriously destructive earthquake measures 6.5 or higher on the Richter Scale.

How can scientists predict earthquakes? Earthquakes are not just **scattered** anywhere on the surface of the Earth; they happen in areas where pieces of the Earth's surface meet. For example, earthquakes often occur on the west coasts of North and South

40 America, around the Mediterranean Sea, and along the Pacific coast of Asia.

One way to predict earthquakes is to look for changes in the Earth's surface, like a sudden drop in the water level in the ground. Some people say that animals can predict earthquakes. Before earthquakes, people have seen chickens sitting in trees, fish jumping out of the water, snakes leaving their holes, and other animals acting strangely.

On February 4, 1975, scientists predicted an
earthquake in northeastern China and told people in the
earthquake zone to leave the cities. More than a million
people moved into the surrounding countryside, into
safe, open fields away from buildings. That afternoon,
the ground rolled and shook beneath the people's feet.

In seconds, 90% of the buildings in the city of Haicheng were destroyed. The decision to tell the people to leave the cities saved 10,000 lives.

However, more than a year later, on July 28, 1976, the scientists were not so lucky. East of Beijing, Chinese scientists were discussing a possible earthquake. During their meeting, the worst earthquake in modern times hit. Estimates of deaths **ranged** from 250,000 to 695,000.



The earthquake measured 7.9 on the Richter Scale.

In late 1984, strong earthquakes began shaking the
Nevado del Ruiz <u>volcano</u> in Colombia. On November
14, 1985, the volcano finally <u>erupted</u>. A nearby river
became a sea of mud that buried four towns, and more
than 2,100 people were killed. This combination of an
earthquake and a volcanic eruption was not a <u>unique</u>
veent. In fact, it's not unusual for earthquakes and
volcanic eruptions to happen at the same time.

one of a kind

Mexico City has frequent earthquakes. An earthquake there on September 19, 1985, measured 8.1 on the Richter Scale and killed 7,000 people. Most victims died when buildings fell on them.

San Francisco, California, also has frequent earthquakes. However, newer buildings there are built to be safe in earthquakes. When an earthquake measuring 7.1 on the Richter Scale hit northern

California on October 17, 1989, only 67 people were killed. The earthquake hit in the afternoon, when thousands of people were driving home from work. Freeways and bridges broke and fell. Buried under the layers of the Oakland Freeway, people were crushed in their flattened cars. Explosions sounded like thunder as older buildings seemed to burst apart along with

thousands of people were driving home from work.

Freeways and bridges broke and fell. Buried under the layers of the Oakland Freeway, people were crushed in their flattened cars. Explosions sounded like thunder as older buildings seemed to burst apart along with the freeways. As electric power lines were broken by the falling bridges and buildings, the sky, covered with huge clouds of black dust, appeared to be filled with lightning. Water from broken pipes rushed into the streets and mixed with gas from broken gas lines, causing more explosions.



lightning

problems. Everyone worked together to save survivors
and comfort victims. The next day, the disaster sites
looked terrible. Victims couldn't find their houses,
their cars, or even their streets. Boats were destroyed,
and <u>debris</u> covered the surface of the sea. There was no
water, no electricity, no telephone service, only the
smell of garbage floating in melted ice in refrigerators

trash

smell of garbage **floating** in **melted** ice in refrigerators open to the sun. Losses and **property** damage from the earthquake amounted to millions of dollars.



Seismology is the study of earthquakes, and a seismologist is a scientist who observes earthquakes.

Seismologists have given us valuable knowledge about earthquakes. Their equipment measures the smallest vibrations on the surface of the Earth. They are trying to find ways to use knowledge about earthquakes to save lives and to help solve the world's energy shortage. The Earth's natural activity underground creates energy in the form of heat. Geothermal means earth heat.

If seismologists could predict earthquakes, we could save about 20,000 human lives each year.

Humans can control many things about nature, but they cannot control earthquakes.

## **a** Vocabulary

|    | volcanoes   | rolled               | floods            | unique                  |  |
|----|---|----------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|--|
|    | vibrate   | thunder              | erupted           | crush                   |  |
|    | victim  | lightning            | bursts            | melts                   |  |
|    | float   | layer                | geothermal        | mild                    |  |
| 1. | When snow _   |                      | _ in the mountain | s, it can cause         |  |
|    |   | in the lowl          | ands.             |                         |  |
| 2. | Earthquakes ca  | n happen before      | the eruption of   |                         |  |
| 3. | <u> </u>  | energy con           | nes from heat und | er the Earth.           |  |
| 4. | Mount St. Helens, a volcano in Washington State in the United States, |                      |                   |                         |  |
|    |   | in 1980.             |                   |                         |  |
| 5. | When Peter set  | his pencil down,     | it                | off onto the floor.     |  |
| 6. | A blowout happ  | oens when a tire     |                   | _ while a car is moving |  |
| 7. | The weather ha  | s been               | this we           | eek. Even though it is  |  |
|    | winter, it hasn't   | been very cold.      |                   |                         |  |
| 8. | They built their  | house themselve      | es, so it's truly |                         |  |
| 9. | There are both  | heat and activity    | below the outer _ |                         |  |
|    | of the Earth.   |                      |                   |                         |  |
| 0. | A storm with be   | oth                  | and               | is                      |  |
|    | sometimes calle   | ed an electrical sto | orm.              |                         |  |

181



## Vocabulary\_

|     | layer  | scattered             | floating                      | roll                     |  |  |
|-----|--|-----------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------|--|--|
|     | observe  | debris                | ranges                        | seismology               |  |  |
|     | victim   | cope                  | crushed                       | thunder                  |  |  |
|     | vibration  | epicenter             | property                      | unique                   |  |  |
| 1.  | After the huge   | wave sank the ship    | o, all you could see          | was some                 |  |  |
|     |  | day appropria         | on the sur                    | face of the sea.         |  |  |
| 2.  | The wind   | m                     | y papers all over the         | e room.                  |  |  |
| 3.  | In a rain forest,  | the lower             | of plan                       | nt growth is             |  |  |
|     | protected by th  | e upper one.          |                               |                          |  |  |
| 4.  | Students who p   | olan to become teac   | chers usually have to         | 0                        |  |  |
|     | *  | classes as a f        | irst step toward tea          | ching.                   |  |  |
| 5.  | The freeway br   | idge fell down beca   | ause it was near the          |                          |  |  |
|     |  | of the earthq         | uake. Its weight              |                          |  |  |
|     | many cars.   |                       |                               |                          |  |  |
| 6.  | When we stand  | near a busy freew     | ay, we can feel the           |                          |  |  |
|     | of the traffic un  | der our feet.         |                               |                          |  |  |
| 7.  | The yearly pay   | of an engineer        | fr                            | om \$17,000              |  |  |
|     | to \$75,000.   |                       |                               |                          |  |  |
| 8.  | Mr. Dahood use   | ed to be a rich man   | , but he was a                | of                       |  |  |
|     | the earthquake   | and lost all of his _ |                               | er i e i griffiche en 19 |  |  |
| 9.  | Sometimes when people have serious problems, they cannot |                       |                               |                          |  |  |
|     |  | with them.            | the state of the state of the |                          |  |  |
| 10. |  | has helped u          | s find possible earth         | nquake sites.            |  |  |
|     |  |                       |                               |                          |  |  |



## Vocabulary Review

Write the correct synonym and antonym for each word in the chart.

| Synonyms      |       |           | d do- * : |
|---------------|-------|-----------|-----------|
| answer        | small | dangerous | pick up   |
| complicated   | make  | take away | balance   |
| consider      | allow | until now | wide      |
| Antonyms      |       |           |           |
| uncomplicated | give  | forbid    | safe      |
| ignore        | drop  | not yet   | actual    |
| narrow        | unit  | destroy   | huge      |

|              | Synonyms     | Antonyms   |
|--------------|--------------|--|
| 1. lift      | pick up      | drop   |
| 2. complex   |              | granica stadije i era b  |
| 3. so far    |              | This was pure of   |
| 4. create    | , ".TUEL , w | asa naswyafipes waa  |
| 5. respond   |              | the state of the s |
| 6. steal     |              |  |
| 7. broad     |              | Then tridge is   |
| 8. hazardous | a i Viplanta |  |
| 9. tiny      |              |  |
| 10. permit   | 1 2 2        |  |

| d | Ti | rue | e/False/Not Enough Information   |
|---|----|-----|--|
|   |    | 1.  | Today, scientists know something about the causes of earthquakes.                |
|   | _  | 2.  | Most earthquakes cause a lot of property damage.                                 |
|   | _  | 3.  | More than half of the world's earthquakes are too small to cause serious damage. |
|   | _  | 4.  | More people are killed by huge sea waves than by                                 |
|   |    |     | falling buildings.   |

Instagram:@IELTS\_Matters

| <br>5.  | Seismologists can measure the size of seismic waves.    |
|---------|---|
| <br>6.  | Removing water from the ground causes earthquakes.      |
| <br>7.  | Most of the world's earthquakes are mild.               |
| <br>8.  | An earthquake in 1989 destroyed the city of Oakland.    |
| <br>9.  | People can predict earthquakes by studying the weather. |
| <br>10. | Thermal means heat.                                     |



### Comprehension Questions

- 1. How does movement in the Earth cause earthquakes?
- 2. What is the epicenter of an earthquake? What is a seismic wave?
- 3. Why does most of the damage from an earthquake happen near the epicenter?
- 4. Why are earthquakes dangerous when they happen in the middle of the ocean?
- 5. What can you look for to predict an earthquake?
- 6. What was lucky about the earthquake that happened in northeastern China in 1975?
- 7. How can people protect themselves and their property from earthquakes?
- 8. Why do people continue to live where there are earthquakes?



#### Paraphrasing

Use your own words to combine the ideas in these two sentences from the text. It is not necessary to use the same number of sentences. You may use more.

Usually, an earthquake is strong enough to cause damage only near its epicenter.

The amount of destruction caused by an earthquake depends on where it happens, what time it happens, and how strong it is.



#### Main Idea

Write or copy a sentence that is the main idea for these paragraphs.

- 1. Paragraph 3 (lines 14-20)
- 2. Paragraph 8 (lines 49-57)
- 3. Paragraph 10 (lines 64–71)





## Word Forms

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

|     | Verb       | Noun                    | Adjective       | Adverb            |
|-----|------------|-------------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1.  | respond    | response                | responsive      | responsively      |
| 2.  | consider   | consideration           | (in)considerate | (in)considerately |
| 3.  |            | complexity              | complex         |                   |
| 4.  | educate    | education               | educational     | TO SHIP TO SHIP   |
| 5.  | create     | creation<br>creativity  | (un)creative    | creatively        |
| 6.  | value      | value                   | valuable        |                   |
| 7.  | observe    | observation observatory | (un)observant   |                   |
| 8.  | specialize | specialist              | special         |                   |
| 9.  | explain    | explanation             | (un)explainable |                   |
| 10. | believe    | belief                  | (un)believable  | (un)believably    |

| Ι. | The police immediately to our call for help.                     |
|----|--|
| 2. | Marge is a very person. She thinks of others and                 |
|    | what they want, instead of thinking of herself most of the time. |
| 3. | The of modern society affects family life.                       |
| 4. | There are a few programs on TV.                                  |
| 5. | Pablo Picasso was a very artist. He was known for                |
|    | his  |
| 6. | Most people want to have friends. They the                       |
|    | friendship of people they like.                                  |
| 7. | After the director of the English program classes,               |
|    | she writes up her  |
| 8. | She wants to be a doctor who in childhood diseases               |



| 9. Can scientists give a clear  | of what actually happens  |
|---|---------------------------|
| deep in the Earth? No, some of the details are .  | so far.                   |
| 10. Scientists consider it that   |                           |
| volcanic eruptions.   |                           |
| i Scanning  |                           |
| Scan the text to find this information. Write a short ans line where you found the information.   | wer and the number of the |
| 1. In 1975, what percentage of the buildings in the destroyed?  | city of Haicheng were     |
| 2. What did the Mexico City earthquake measure of   | on the Richter Scale?     |
| 3. What time of day did the earthquake hit norther 1989?  | n California in October   |
| 4. What is the largest number of people killed in ar  | n earthquake?             |
| _ <del></del>   |                           |
| Two-Word Verbs  |                           |
| Learn these two-word verbs and then fill in the blanks we correct verb form. Numbers 2 and 3 use the same express   |                           |
| mix up = mistake one thing for another dress up = put on special clothes have on = be wearing look out = be careful spread out = spread over a certain area or time |                           |
| <ol> <li>Don't try to learn forty irregular verbs in one day</li> </ol>   | v                         |
| them over a week or two.  |                           |
| 2. People usually for a party.  | Children like to          |
| in their parents' old clothes   |                           |
| are adults.   | and found in a            |
|   |                           |

| 3. She    | her homework assignments and gave the reading   |
|-----------|---|
| homew     | ork to the wrong teacher. Then she found out that she had done                          |
| the wro   | ong page. She was   |
| 4         | ! There's a child in the street!  |
| 5. Mike _ | his running clothes because he was going  |
| to exerc  | cise.   |
|           |   |
| Sec       | quencing  |
|           | entences about the October 17, 1989, earthquake in the right order.<br>is done for you. |
| a.        | Freeways and bridges broke and fell.  |
| b.        | As electric power lines broke, the dark sky seemed to be full of lightning.             |
| 1 .       | People were driving home in their cars in the afternoon after work.                     |
|           | Buildings exploded and pipes broke.   |
|           | Water and gas from broken lines mixed and exploded.                                     |
|           | The Earth began to shake and roll.  |
|           | People died in their cars when freeways and bridges fell on top of them.                |
| h.        | Huge clouds of black dust began to cover the sky.                                       |
| i.        | Victims could find nothing when they came back.   |
| j.        | Emergency workers hurried to find survivors and save victims.                           |
| 938.      | nmarizing   |
| Summariz  | e paragraph 9, lines 58–63. Use your own words to tell the                              |

main idea.



# **m** Guided Writing

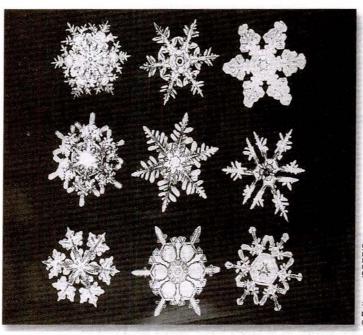
Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. You are in a city when an earthquake hits. Describe what happens. Tell what you feel, see, hear, and smell.
- 2. You are a seismologist. Tell what scientific information you know about earthquakes. Include how and where they happen and what you are studying right now.

## Snow and Hail

lesson

3



# @ Rettmar

## Before You Read

- 1. What is the difference between snow and hail?
- 2. What problems can snow and hail cause?
- 3. Do you like to look at snow? Do you like to be outside in it?

## **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

- 1. This happens in the **atmosphere**, ten kilometers above the Earth.
- 2. This sounds simple, but it is actually very complex.
- 3. Hail is a small round ball of **alternating** layers of snow and clear ice.
- 4. All snowflakes are six-sided, but no one understands why this is so.

## 3 Snow and Hail



Millions of people in the world have never seen snow. Others see more of it than they want to. Hail is much more common; it <u>occurs</u> even in deserts.

happens

Each tiny piece of snow is called a snowflake, and each flake has six sides or six points. Billions of snowflakes fall every winter, and the <u>astonishing</u> fact is that each one is different. A snowflake is as individual as someone's handwriting or <u>fingerprint</u>.

amazing

A snowflake forms inside a winter storm cloud
when a microscopic piece of dust is trapped inside a
tiny drop of water. This happens in the atmosphere, ten
kilometers above the Earth. The water freezes around
the dust, and as this flake is blown by the wind, it
collects more drops of water. These drops freeze too,
and the snowflake becomes heavy enough to fall to the

not able to escape
air around the Earth

and the snowflake becomes heavy enough to fall to the Earth. As it falls, it passes through areas where the temperature and humidity vary. It collects more and more tiny drops of water, and the shape continually changes. Some drops fall off and start to form

fingerprint

20 new snowflakes.



This sounds **simple**, but it is actually very complex. It is so complex that **mathematicians** using computers are just beginning to understand what happens. Every change in temperature and humidity in the air around the snowflake causes a change in the speed and **pattern** of the snowflake's formation as it makes its trip to the Earth. Since no two flakes follow exactly the same path to the ground, no two snowflakes are exactly alike. However, they are all six-sided. So far, no one understands why this is **so**.

true

Hail is a small round ball of **alternating** layers of snow and clear ice. It forms inside thunderclouds. There are two theories about how hailstones form.

One theory says that hail forms when drops of water freeze in the upper air. As they fall, they collect more drops of water, just as snowflakes do. They also collect snow. The ice and snow build up in layers. If you cut a hailstone, you can see these alternating layers.

The other theory says that hail starts as a raindrop.

The wind carries it higher into the atmosphere, where it gets covered by snow. It becomes heavy and begins to fall. As it falls, it gets a new layer of water, which freezes. Then the wind carries it back up to the snow region, and it gets another layer of snow. This can

happen multiple times. Finally, the hailstone is too heavy to travel on the wind, and it falls to the ground.

Only thunderstorms can produce hail, but very few of them do. Perhaps only one in 400 thunderstorms creates hailstones. Hail **ordinarily** falls in a strip from ten to twenty kilometers wide and **up to** forty kilometers long.

A hailstone is usually less than eight centimeters in diameter. However, hailstones can be much bigger than that. Sometimes they are as big as baseballs. The largest hailstone ever recorded weighed over 680 grams and had a diameter of thirteen centimeters.

Hail can do a lot of damage to agriculture, especially since hail usually appears in **midsummer**, when the plants are partly grown. If the crops are destroyed, it is too late to plant more, and the farmer has lost

many; a number of

usually no more than

the middle of



everything. The most damage is done by hailstones that are only the size of peas. In one terrible hailstorm in 1923 in Rostov, in Ukraine, twenty-three people and many cattle were killed.

Snow can cause damage too. It can cave in the roof of a building. A heavy snowstorm can delay airplane flights and cause automobile accidents. Farm animals sometimes die in snowstorms, and when country roads are closed by snow, people can be trapped in their cars and freeze to death. Yet there is nothing more beautiful than the sight of millions of snowflakes falling at night. That is when people think of the beauty, and not the science, of snowflakes.

## Vocabulary

|    | ordinarily            | mathematics       | miasummer                | traps               |
|----|-----------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
|    | SO                    | atmosphere        | snowflake                | microscopic         |
|    | alternating           | multiple          | up to                    | fingerprint         |
| 1. | Hail falls in a strip |                   | forty kilometers         | long.               |
| 2. | In                    | , the study       | of lines, angles, and sh | napes is            |
|    | called geometry.      |                   |                          |                     |
| 3. | The weather is usu    | ally warm or ho   | ot in                    | Hardiner Allins     |
| 4. | Some people use_      |                   | to catch animals.        |                     |
| 5. | Some people still b   | elieve that volca | nic eruptions are caus   | sed by angry gods,  |
|    | but we know this i    | sn't              | arterior twent           |                     |
| 6. | Every                 | has six           | sides.                   |                     |
| 7. | The boys and girls    | lined up in       | rows                     |                     |
| 8. | Bacteria are          | 7                 | They can't be seen with  | hout                |
|    | a microscope.         | 35                |                          |                     |
| 9. | There are             | reas              | sons to study earthqua   | ikes, not just one. |
|    |                       |                   |                          |                     |

|   |       | A CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF TH | ١ |
|---|-------|--|---|
| 2 | 11.60 | 2.   |   |

## Vocabulary

|               | occur          | fingerpri             | nt                 | up to           | •                              |
|---------------|----------------|-----------------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------|
|               | ordinarily     | hail                  | all the sales      | SO              |                                |
|               | trap           | microsco              | TO SHOULD BE A     | simply          | astonished                     |
| 1.            | I was          | 1                     | that I was         | able to lift 10 | 0 pounds. I never              |
|               | thought I co   |                       |                    |                 |                                |
| 2.            | When did t     | he last eruption      | of Kilauea         | a               | ?                              |
| 3.            | The police     |                       | crim               | inals.          |                                |
| 4.            | There is a _   |                       | to her             | behavior. Sh    | e's always happy in the        |
| 1             | morning ar     | d sad in the ever     | ning.              | nasebaadi e     |                                |
| 5. ]          | Humans ar      | e polluting the E     | arth's             |                 | S II is a small course of II P |
|               |                |                       |                    |                 | - Company                      |
|               |                | •                     |                    |                 | oday he's leaving early.       |
|               |                | can de                |                    |                 |                                |
| · 1000 (1000) | 26             |                       | ,                  | mensago         | Haddiere dinas                 |
|               | <b>V</b> ocabu | ılary Review: D       | efinition          | is              |                                |
| Mai           | tch each wor   | d with its definition |                    |                 |                                |
|               | 1. ob          | serve                 | a. move            | ement of the E  | Earth                          |
|               | 2. so          | far                   | b. also            |                 |                                |
|               | 3. in          | addition              | c. ÷               |                 |                                |
|               | 4. ea          | rthquake              | d. top la          | yer             | eli How does baghileete        |
|               | 5. sto         | ory                   | e. CO <sub>2</sub> |                 | (no Reservo no rest)           |
|               | 6. pr          | efer                  | f. floor           |                 |                                |
|               | 7. div         | vide                  | g. fiction         | 1               |                                |
|               | 8. res         | spond                 | h. of the          | sun             |                                |
|               | 9. pe          | •                     | i. watch           | 1               |                                |
|               | 10. su         |                       |                    |                 |                                |
|               |                |                       |                    |                 |                                |
|               | 12. sol        | ar                    | l. allow           | lneshi man      | s Constitute du DV (           |
|               |                |                       | m. until i         |                 |                                |





#### **Short Answers**

Write hail, snow, or hail and snow after each of these sentences.

| 1  | As it is blown by | the riving it collects rivotor |  |
|----|-------------------|--------------------------------|--|
| 1. | As it is blown by | the wind, it collects water    |  |

- 2. It occurs only in the colder regions of the world.
- 3. It is formed of layers of ice and snow.
- 4. It can destroy crops. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5. It can cause the death of humans.
- 6. It is sometimes formed around a piece of dust.
- 7. It always has six sides or points. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8. It is produced only by thunderstorms.
- 9. It is a small round ball.
- 10. It can cause damage.



### Comprehension Questions

- 1. Why do all snowflakes have six sides or six points?
- 2. Snowflakes start forming around two things. What are they?
- 3. What does a change in humidity do to the formation of a snowflake?
- 4. Why are no two snowflakes alike?
- 5. Where do hailstones form?
- 6. What causes both snowflakes and hail to fall to the ground?
- 7. How big is the average hailstone?
- 8. How does hail destroy crops?
- 9. Give an example of how snow can be destructive.
- 10. Which is more destructive, hail or snow? Why?
- 11. Do roadrunners ever see hail?



### Main Idea

- 1. Write a sentence for the main idea of paragraph 2 (lines 4–8).
- 2. Write a sentence for the main idea of paragraph 4 (lines 21–30).
- 3. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 10 (lines 57–64)?



# g

## Word Forms: Negative Prefixes

These are common negative prefixes. Put a word from Number 1 in the first sentence below, and so on. Use the right form of the word.

- 1. dis-: dislike, discomfort, displease, disconnect, dishonest
- 2. un-: unequipped, uncreative, unprepared, unobservant
- 3. non-: nonsmoking, nonalcoholic, nonviolent, nonindustrial
- 4. in-: inactive, inconsiderate, incorrect, inexpensive
- 5. im-: impossible, improbable, immovable, imperfect
- 6. il-: illogical, illiterate
- 7. ir-: irregular, irreligious
- 8. mis-: misbehave, misspell, misunderstand, misspeak

| 1. | Alice always                          | the television during a thunderstorm.         |
|----|---------------------------------------|---|
| 2. | Bering and his men were               | for living on the island after                |
|    | their boat sank.                      |   |
| 3. | Coke and Pepsi are                    | drinks.                                       |
| 4. | It is to ea                           | at something in front of someone else and not |
|    | offer him or her some.                |   |
| 5. | It is to so                           | queeze water out of a stone.                  |
| 6. | It isto the                           | ink that someone who is                       |
|    | is uninte                             | lligent.                                      |
| 7. | verbs mi                              | ust be memorized.                             |
| 8. | There are three                       | words in your homework paper.                 |
|    |                                       | *   |
| ŀ  | Articles                              |   |
| Pı | at articles in the blanks if they are | needed.                                       |
| 1. | snowflake forms inside                | e winter storm cloud when                     |
|    | microscopic piece of dust is tra      | apped inside tiny drop of                     |
|    | water.                                |   |
| 2. | This happens in atmos                 | phere, ten kilometers above Earth.            |

|  | dust, and as this flake is blown by         |
|--|---|
| wind, it collects more dr  |   |
| and the second s | areas where temperature and                 |
|  | viole, and some the for equationally blanca |
|  | thematicians using computers are            |
| , 0  | hat happens.                                |
|  | ature and humidity in air                   |
|  | speed and pattern of                        |
| snowflake's formation as it mak  |   |
|  | nd ball of alternating layers of            |
| snow and clear i   | ce.   |
| Compound Words  Make a one-word or two-word compound column and one from the second.   | and using a word from the first             |
| 1. sky   | a. sign                                     |
| 2. science   | b. surgery                                  |
| 3. thunder   | c. storm                                    |
| 4. traffic   | d. walk                                     |
| 5. diet  | e. scraper                                  |
| 6. ground  | f. force                                    |
| 7. brain   | g. floor                                    |
| 8. work  | h. branch                                   |
| 9. side  | i. fiction                                  |
| 10. tree   | j. plan                                     |
| •  | 30.00                                       |



## Summarizing

Write a summary of the information about snow. Write five or six sentences.



# Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

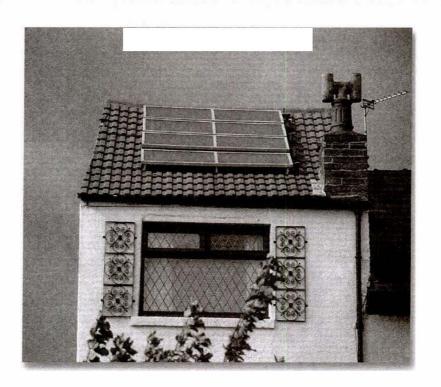
- 1. Compare snow and hail.
- 2. Describe a serious winter storm that you experienced or heard about.



lesson

4

# Photovoltaic Cells: Energy Source of the Future



## Before You Read

- 1. What is solar energy?
- 2. Do you have anything with you right now that works by solar energy? If so, what is it?
- 3. How do we produce electricity? Name as many ways as you know.



#### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from the reading in this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

- 1. A **conductor** is something that electricity can pass through. Water and metals conduct electricity, but wood does not.
- 2. Another advantage is that it is **solid-state**; that is, there are no moving parts.
- 3. If the top gets dusty, less light enters, and it doesn't work as **efficiently** as it should.
- 4. Developing countries cannot export enough agricultural products and other raw materials.

# 4 Photovoltaic Cells: Energy Source of the Future



As populations increase and countries industrialize, the world's demand for energy increases. Our supply of petroleum and gas is limited, but the **photovoltaic cell** offers a solution to the problem of a future energy

- shortage. This cell is already an important source of energy. In fact, it seems almost like **magic**. The photovoltaic cell changes sunlight directly into energy. Solar energy—energy from the sun—is clean, easily available, **inexhaustible**, and free, if the equipment is available.
- without end;

Did you ever reach to open the door at a store or hotel and see it open by itself? Does your camera always let in the right amount of light for your pictures? These are examples of uses of photovoltaic cells. They are also used in calculators and watches, in remote

are also used in calculators and watches, in remote telecommunication units, and in central power stations to produce electricity. Another important use is in the space exploration program. This program could not exist without the energy produced by photovoltaic cells.



The photovoltaic cell is simple. It has <u>transparent</u> metallic film at the top. Below this is a layer of **silicon**. A metal base is at the bottom.

able to be seen through

The sunlight falls on the **boundary** between the two different types of **semiconductors** in the photovoltaic cell, the silicon and the metal base. A **conductor** is something that electricity can pass through. Water and metals conduct electricity, but wood does not. A semiconductor conducts electricity poorly at low temperatures, but when heat or light is added, conductivity is increased.

As the light falls on this boundary between the two types of semiconductors, it creates an electric current. The sunlight is **converted** directly into electricity.

One advantage of the photovoltaic cell is that it is solid-state; that is, there are no moving parts. Since there are no moving parts to break down, the cell will last a long time if it is protected from damage. This protection is important. If the top of the cell gets dusty, less light enters, and the cell doesn't work as efficiently as it should.

In addition, silicon is one of the most common elements in the world; for example, sand is made up mostly of silicon. At one time, the chemical preparation of silicon for use in a photovoltaic cell was very

expensive. Now the cost has gone down a great deal.
 Scientists have also found a way to produce silicon in long sheets, similar to the way plastic for plastic bags is made today. This is helping the cost of a unit of solar energy to fall even more. Today, there are large factories
 using solar-cell systems in a number of countries.

About 18% of the sunlight that reaches the photovoltaic cell is converted into electricity. This is a small amount, so many cells must be used to create a reasonable amount of electricity. However, technology can be developed to make the cells more efficient and raise the percentage of sunlight converted to 27%.

What does solar energy mean to the world? Photovoltaic cells have several advantages over fossil fuels (gas, oil, and coal). Fossil fuels that we use today changed

because



were formed from plants and animals that lived millions of years ago. Those plants and animals were able to exist because of the sun. Obviously, we can't wait a million years for more fossil fuels. The photovoltaic cell gives us the ability to produce energy directly from the sun. The sun's energy can be converted for our use immediately.

At the present time, gas and oil are expensive.

Developing countries cannot export enough agricultural products and other raw materials to allow them to

import the fuel that they need to produce energy. At the same time, petroleum supplies are limited, and in a few decades, they will run out. However, the supply of sunlight is limitless, and most of the poor countries of the world are in the tropics, where there is plenty of sunlight.

The photovoltaic cell has another very important advantage. It is a clean source of energy. The fossil fuels that we use today are the main source of the pollution in our atmosphere.

80 Although many individuals and governments have been reluctant to reduce their dependence on fossil fuels, there is a growing market for solar energy. There is even discussion of collecting solar energy on satellites and then beaming it to Earth. This process is called
85 Space Solar Power. If we truly want cheaper and better ways to create energy, solar power offers

many possibilities.

sell to other

hesitant; afraid; unwilling



| 383 | 0400 |  |
|-----|------|--|
|     |      |  |
|     |      |  |
|     |      |  |

## Vocabulary

|      | photovoltaic cell<br>solid-state                      | inexhaustible<br>reluctant | silicon<br>import                | semiconductors exports |  |
|------|---|----------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------|--|
|      | magic   | raw material               | reasonable                       | exist                  |  |
| 1.   | Scientists think that                                 | the                        | will be an                       | important energy       |  |
|      | source for the future                                 | 2.                         |                                  |                        |  |
| 2.   | The number of snowflakes is limitless and             |                            |                                  |                        |  |
|      | . A photovoltaic cell has two different types of      |                            |                                  |                        |  |
| 4.   | Many people are to try new things.                    |                            |                                  |                        |  |
| 5.   | Do you know how r                                     | many kinds of bi           | rds                              | in the                 |  |
|      | world today?  | MI STAT                    |                                  |                        |  |
| 6.   | Children like to see                                  | - April 1                  | shows.                           |                        |  |
| 7.   | Japan television sets but has to                      |                            |                                  |                        |  |
| oil. |   |                            |                                  |                        |  |
| 8.   | is used to make glass.                                |                            |                                  |                        |  |
| 9.   | fron is the main for making steel.                    |                            |                                  |                        |  |
| 7311 |   |                            |                                  |                        |  |
|      | Vocabulary  |                            |                                  |                        |  |
|      | exist re  | eluctant                   | since                            | efficient              |  |
|      | magical ex  | xport                      | reasonable                       | transparent            |  |
|      | boundary in   | mport                      | conducts                         | converts               |  |
| 1.   | Electric current can pass through metal because metal |                            |                                  |                        |  |
|      | electricity.  |                            |                                  |                        |  |
| 2.   | He was  | to drive                   | e at first, but now h            | e loves to drive.      |  |
| 3.   | Much of thebetween Canada and the United States       |                            |                                  |                        |  |
|      | a straight line.                                      |                            |                                  |                        |  |
| 4.   | Abdullah missed the                                   | e test                     | he was late for class.           |                        |  |
| 5.   | Thirty minutes is a _                                 |                            | length of time for a short test. |                        |  |
|      |   |                            | about watching the sun rise.     |                        |  |
|      | t is more for thirty people to ride in a bus than in  |                            |                                  |                        |  |
|      | thirty different cars.                                |                            |                                  |                        |  |
|      |   |                            |                                  |                        |  |

| 8. Glass is  |  |
|--|--|
| 9. A hydroelectric power station   | water power  |
| into electricity.  |  |
|  |  |
| C Vocabulary Review  |  |
|  | p removada e   |
| Underline the word that does not belong with the others  | and good of the edic   |
| 1. hail, snowflake, trap, rain   |  |
| 2. create, damage, destroy, harm   |  |
| <ol> <li>definite, sure, exact, bacteria</li> <li>satellite, planet, star, sun</li> </ol>  |  |
| 5. consider, object, discuss, talk over  |  |
| 6. backwards, forward, clockwise, sideward   |  |
| 7. physicist, anthropologist, chemist, geologist   |  |
| 8. burst, eruption, flood, earthquake  |  |
| 9. fly, bee, ant, snake  |  |
| 5000/ <b>3</b> 00  |  |
| The state of the s |  |
| 1. Solar energy will not be in the future.   |  |
|  |  |
|  | THE PARTY OF THE P |
|  |  |
| 2. Sunlight first enters a photovoltaic cell through   | <u>n nat</u> ywiady w w é -  |
| a. a metal base  |  |
| b. metallic film   |  |
| c. a layer of silicon  |  |
| 3. The place where the two semiconductors meet is  |  |
| a. border  |  |
| b. conductor<br>c. boundary  |  |
| 4. A semiconductor works best when   |  |
| a. there is wood available   |  |
| b. the temperature is low  |  |
|  |  |
| 5. A photovoltaic cell light into electricity.   |  |
| a. current   |  |
| b. converts  |  |
| c. conducts  | •  |
|  | 203  |

- 6. The cell must be protected from \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. dust
  - b. light
  - c. movement
- 7. At first, these cells were expensive to make because \_\_\_\_
  - a. the chemical preparation of silicon was expensive
  - b. silicon is expensive and hard to find
  - c. it is hard to keep dirt off the cells
- 8. Most of today's air pollution comes from \_\_\_\_\_
  - a. automobiles
  - b. burning fossil fuels
  - c. factories



## Comprehension Questions

- 1. Why do we need a new way to produce energy?
- 2. Describe a photovoltaic cell.
- 3. Give three advantages of photovoltaic cells over fossil fuels.
- 4. In what part of the cell is the electric current created?
- 5. What does *solid-state* mean?
- 6. What happens when a photovoltaic cell gets dusty?
- 7. Why was energy from photovoltaic cells expensive in the beginning?
- 8. How can these cells help developing countries?
- 9. Why are photovoltaic cells so important in the space program?



#### Main Idea

- 1. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 1 (lines 1–10)?
- 2. Write a sentence for the main idea of paragraph 2 (lines 11–19).
- 3. Write the main idea of paragraph 6 (lines 34-40).
- 4. What is the main idea of paragraph 9 (lines 57-66)?



#### Scanning

- 1. Name a material in the reading that does not conduct electricity.
- 2. Name a material in the reading that is made mostly of silicon.
- 3. Name three fossil fuels.





| h | Two-Word | Verbs |
|---|----------|-------|

| Learn these two-word | verbs and | then fil | l in the | blanks | with | the rig | ht words. | Use | the |
|----------------------|-----------|----------|----------|--------|------|---------|-----------|-----|-----|
| correct verb form.   |           |          |          |        |      | y ii    |           |     |     |

|   | eci vero jo                                      |   |   |  |
|---|--|---|---|--|
| 8   | get in   | = arrive (for example   | , a bus or plane)   |  |
| ŀ   | oring up   | = raise (for example,   | children)   |  |
| S   | show up  | = appear  |   |  |
| 9   | stand by   | = wait at a certain pla<br>when you do not ha   | _   | r a seat on an airplane                          |
| 1   | eave out   | = skip; forget to inclu   | de (something)  |  |
| 1. V  | Vhen Ali   | did his homework, he  |   | the third exercise. He                           |
| fo  | orgot to d                                       | o it.   |   |  |
| 2. V  | Vhat time  | does the train from P   | aris  | ?  |
|   |  |   |   | s flight, but if someone                         |
| d   | oesn't _   | , I c   | an have that person   | n's seat. I have to                              |
| _   |  | until every   | one has boarded.  |  |
|   | larv was   | orn on a farm but sh  | ne was  | in a   |
| 4. N  |  | colli oli a lalli, cat ol   |   |  |
|   | mall towi  |   |   |  |
|   |  |   |   |  |
|   | mall towi  |   |   |  |
|   | mall towi  |   |   |  |
| SI  | mall town  |   |   |  |
| Sr<br><b>i</b><br>Fill i                                      | Missir   | i.<br>g Words<br>ks with any word that fi   | its in the sentence.  |  |
| Sr<br>i<br>Fill i   | Missir   | g Words  ks with any word that fi   | its in the sentence.<br>ns increase and cou                                   | ntries industriali <b>z</b> e,                   |
| Sr<br>I<br>Fill i   | Missir   | g Words  ks with any word that fi  population world's de  | its in the sentence.<br>ns increase and cou                                   | ntries industriali <b>z</b> e,                   |
| sr<br>Fill i<br>1<br>er                                       | Missir  in the blan  nergy inc                   | g Words  ks with any word that fi  population world's de  | its in the sentence.  ns increase and cou  mand                               | ntries industrialize,                            |
| Fill i  er  2. Ti   | Missir  In the blan  hergy inchis cell           | g Words  ks with any word that fire  population  world's denotes.                                   | its in the sentence.  as increase and cou  mand  ready                        | ntries industriali <b>z</b> e,                   |
| Fill i  1. — er  2. Tl  | Missir  In the blan  nergy inchis cell —         | g Words  ks with any word that fi  population world's defreases. als                                | its in the sentence.  Instincted and coumand  Tready  Tready                  | ntries industrialize, important                  |
| Fill i  Fill i  The er  So  So  So  So  So  So  So  So  So  S | Missir In the blan hergy inchis cell —           | g Words  ks with any word that fit  population world's defreases.  alt ener                         | its in the sentence.  Instincted and coumand  Tready  Tready  Tready  Treach  | ntries industrialize, important open             |
| Fill i  Fill i  1. — er  2. Tl  sc  3. —                      | Missir  In the blan  hergy inchis cell —         | g Words  ks with any word that fire population world's defreases.  also enerous you ever re-        | its in the sentence.  Instincted and coumand  Tready  Tready  Treach  a st    | ntries industrialize, important open ore         |
| Fill i  Fill i  Cer  Scott                                    | Missir  In the blan  hergy inchis cell —         | g Words  ks with any word that fit  population world's defreases.  alt  ener you ever re            | its in the sentence.  Instincted and coumand  Tready  Tready  Treach  a st    | ntries industrialize, important open ore         |
| Fill i  1 er  2. Tl sc  3                                     | Missir  The blan  Theregy inchis cell —  Durce — | g Words  ks with any word that fit  population world's defreases.  alt  ener you ever re door hotel | its in the sentence.  Instincted and coumand  Iready  Iready  Ireach  In a st | ntries industrialize, important open ore it open |

<u>d</u> 205

| 5.  | It has transparent r | netallic film _   | the top.                                   |
|-----|----------------------|-------------------|--|
|     |                      | _ this is         | layer of silicon.                          |
| 6.  | The sunlight falls   |                   | the boundary                               |
|     | the two different ty | pes               | semiconductors,                            |
|     |                      | _ silicon         | the metal base.                            |
| 7.  | One advantage        |                   | the photovoltaic cell is that it is solid- |
|     | state;               | is,               | are no moving parts.                       |
| 8.  | Since there          |                   | no moving parts to break                   |
|     |                      | _, the cell       | last                                       |
|     |                      | _ long time _     | it is protected                            |
|     |                      | _ damage.         |  |
| 9.  | If                   | top of            | cell                                       |
|     |                      | _ dusty, less _   | enters,                                    |
|     | <del></del>          | _ the cell        | work as efficiently                        |
|     |                      | _ it should.      |  |
| A   | Word Forms           | ctives is in sen  | atences of this form:                      |
| 11, | ,                    |                   |  |
| Th  | ere are two sentence |                   |  |
|     | A .                  | lk by the ocean o |  |



Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

|     | Verb      | Noun                     | Adjective                    | Adverb                       |
|-----|-----------|--------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1.  | trap      | trap<br>trapper          | trapped                      |                              |
| 2.  | alternate | alternate<br>alternative | alternate<br>alternative     | alternately<br>alternatively |
| 3.  | occur     | occurrence               |                              |                              |
| 4.  | bound     | boundary                 | bound                        |                              |
| 5.  | theorize  | theory                   | theoretical                  | theoretically                |
| 6.  |           | efficiency               | (in)efficient                | (in)efficiently              |
| 7.  |           | reasonableness           | (un)reasonable               | (un)reasonably               |
| 8.  | exhaust   | exhaustion               | exhausted<br>(in)exhaustible | (in)exhaustibly              |
| 9.  |           | transparency             | transparent                  | transparently                |
| 10. | convert   | conversion               | convertible                  | 100                          |

| 1. | . When an animal is        | , it can't get away.                       |
|----|----------------------------|--|
| 2. | 2. There is no             | to our plan. We can find no                |
|    | plan.                      |  |
| 3. | . There were three         | of breakdowns at the electric              |
|    | power station.             |  |
| 4. | Norway is                  | _ by Sweden, Finland, Russia, the Atlantic |
|    | Ocean, and the North Sea.  |  |
| 5. | . Scientists               | about the center of the Earth, but they    |
|    | can't know for sure.       |  |
| 6. | . It is to wi              | rite by hand instead of using a computer.  |
| 7. | . It is to ex              | pect a student to memorize fifty new words |
|    | a day.                     |  |
| 8. | . Scott and his men became | on their journey back                      |
|    | from the South Pole.       |  |
| 9. | is a chara                 | cteristic of water and glass.              |

Lesson 4: Photovoltaic Cells: Energy Source of the Future

10. Missionaries try to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ people to their religion.



## Finding the Reason

Write the reason for each statement.

| Statement  | Reason |              |
|--|--------|--------------|
| The entrance door at a hotel opens by itself.        |        | Cond. Lend 5 |
| 2. Electricity can pass through water.               |        | throad Large |
| 3. The first photovoltaic cells were very expensive. |        |              |
| 4. These cells can help developing countries.        |        |              |
| 5. Energy from the sun is inexhaustible.             |        |              |
| 6. The photovoltaic cell can't break down.           |        |              |
| 7. The photovoltaic cell might work inefficiently.   |        |              |



## **Guided Writing**

Write one of these two short compositions.

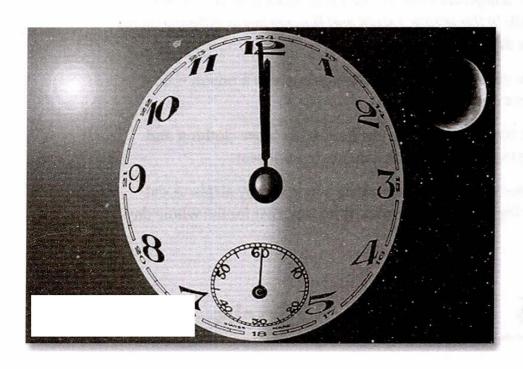
- 1. What are some of the advantages of solar energy over energy made from fossil fuels?
- 2. What are some of the disadvantages of solar energy?



# **Biological Clocks**

lesson

5



## **Before You Read**

- 1. How do you feel when you have to get up much earlier than usual?
- 2. Do you feel best early in the morning, in the middle of the day, in the afternoon, at sunset, or late at night?
- 3. If you take a long trip on an airplane, do you have trouble getting used to the time change?



#### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

- 1. In the **temperate** zones of the Earth, trees lose their leaves in the fall. In the spring, leaves and flowers begin growing again as the days lengthen.
- 2. When winter comes, some birds migrate to a region with a warmer climate.
- 3. To be comfortable on an airplane, wear **loose** clothing and take your shoes off while you are in your seat.
- 4. On the fourth day before taking a long trip by airplane, eat three big meals. Then, on the third day, fast for the whole day.

# 5 Biological Clocks



If you have ever flown across several time zones, you have experienced **jet lag.** You arrived in a new time zone, but your body was still living on the time in the old zone. You were **wide awake** and ready for dinner in the middle of the night, and you wanted to sleep all day.

People suffer from jet lag because all living things have a **biological** clock. Plants and animals are all in **rhythm** with the natural divisions of time—day and night and the seasons.

a regular beat

At sunrise, plants open their leaves and begin producing food. At night, they rest. In the **temperate** zones of the Earth, trees lose their leaves in the fall as the days grow shorter and there is less sunlight. In the spring, leaves and flowers begin growing again as the days lengthen.

Rain sets the rhythm of desert plants. Plants in the desert may appear dead for months or even years, but when it begins to rain, the plants seem to come to life



overnight. The leaves turn green, and flowers appear.

20 The plants produce seeds quickly, before the rain stops. These seeds may lie on the ground for years before rain starts the cycle of growth again. The plants biological clock gives the signal for these things to happen.

At <u>dawn</u>, most birds wake up and start singing. When the sun goes down, they go to sleep. When spring arrives, they start looking for a mate. When winter comes, some birds migrate to a region with a warmer climate. Their biological clocks tell them that it is time to 30 do all of these things.

Animals that live near the sea and depend on both the land and water for their food have their biological clocks set with the tides. When the tide goes out, they know that it is time to search for the food that the 35 sea left behind.

Some insects seem to set their alarm clocks to wake them up at night. They stay out all night looking for food, and then they sleep during the day. Honeybees have a very strong sense of time. They can tell by the 40 position of the sun exactly when their favorite flowers open.

Some French scientists did an experiment with honeybees. They put out sugar water every morning at 10:00 and at noon, and the bees came to drink the 45 water at exactly the right time. Then the scientists put the sugar water in a room that was brightly lit twenty-four hours a day. They started putting the sugar water out at 8:00 p.m. It took the bees a week to find it at the different hour, but from then on, they 50 came to eat in the evening instead of in the morning. Later, the scientists took the honeybees to New York. The bees came for the food at the time their bodies told

Humans, like other animals, have a biological clock 55 that tells them when to sleep and eat. It causes other changes too. Blood pressure is lower at night, the heartbeat is slower, and the body temperature is a little

them, only it was 3:00 p.m. New York time. Their

bodies were still on Paris time.



25

lower. We even go through several levels of sleep, cycles 60 of deep and light sleep.

Other events occur in cycles too. More babies are born between midnight and dawn than at any other time. More natural deaths occur at night, but more heart attacks happen early in the morning. Most deaths from 65 diseases in hospitals occur between midnight and 6:00 a.m. Some police say that there are more violent crimes and traffic accidents when there is a full moon.

The honeybees in the experiment reset their biological clock for different feeding hours. Humans do 70 this too. People who work at night learn to sleep during the day and eat at night. Students who fly halfway across the world to study in another country get used to the new time zone after a few days. When they go home, they change back again. Our bodies are 75 controlled by a biological clock, but we can learn to reset it to a different time.

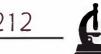
#### How to <u>Lessen</u> Jet Lag

- 1. Try not to become exhausted before you leave. Get plenty of sleep, and leave enough time to get to the airport and check in without having to hurry.
- 2. Wear <u>loose</u> clothing and take your shoes off while you are in your seat.
- 3. Walk around the plane and move around in your seat.
- 85 4. Figure out breakfast time in the time zone you are flying to. Four days before your flight, start a feast (eating a lot) and fast (eating nothing or very little) schedule. On the fourth day before you fly, eat three heavy meals. If you drink coffee, tea, or cola drinks that contain caffeine, have them only between 90 3:00 and 5:00 p.m. On the third day before your flight, eat very lightly—salads, light soups, fruits, and juices. Again, have drinks with caffeine only between 3:00 and 5:00 p.m. On the next to the last day before you leave, feast again. On the day before 95 you leave, fast. If you are flying west, drink

caffeinated drinks in the morning; if you are going

east, drink them between 6:00 and 11:00 p.m.

not tight



80

5. On the day you leave, have your first meal at the time people in the new time zone eat breakfast. If the flight is long, sleep on the plane until the new breakfast time, and don't drink any alcohol. When you wake up, have a big meal. Stay awake and active, and eat at the new time zone hours.



## Vocabulary

|    | signai                | active              | wide awake           | attack                 |
|----|-----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
|    | alarm                 | biology             | rhythm               | jet lag                |
|    | temperate             | migrate             | heartbeat            | fast                   |
| 1. | Countries with        |                     | climates have for    | our different seasons. |
| 2. | The science and stu   | ady of life is call | led                  |                        |
| 3. | You should drive a    | car only when       | you are              | Tarak sani.            |
| 4. | Some people like to   | o listen to the _   |                      | of the falling rain.   |
| 5. | Many people           |                     | for religious reason | ons.                   |
| 6. | When the fire         |                     | sounded, everyo      | ne left the building.  |
| 7. | Doctors listen to a p | person's            | thro                 | ough a stethoscope to  |
|    | see if there are any  | irregularities.     |                      |                        |
| 8. | Larger animals will   | l often             | small                | er animals.            |
| 9. | Pilots don't usually  | suffer from         |                      | because they never     |
|    | stay in the new tim   | e zone very lon     | g.                   |                        |

# **b** Vocabulary

|    | rhythm<br>feast<br>active | dawn<br>lessens<br>caffeine | -               | tides<br>signal<br>attack |
|----|---------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------|
| 1. | Chocolate, tea, co        | ffee, and cola drin         | ks contain      |                           |
| 2. | The police officer        | gave a                      | for             | the cars to stop.         |
| 3. | Some birds                | to                          | a warmer clim   | ate in the winter.        |
| 4. | The villagers prep        | oared a                     | to e            | ntertain the visiting     |
|    | government offici         | ials.                       |                 |                           |
| 5. | There are high an         | d low                       | in the          | e ocean twice a day.      |
|    |                           |                             |                 |                           |
| 7. |                           | is the opposite             | of tight.       |                           |
| 8. | A different diet _        |                             | the effects of  | jet lag.                  |
| 9. | People who are _          |                             | seem to live    | longer than people who    |
|    | don't get much ex         | kercise.                    |                 |                           |
|    | Vocabular <u>y</u> I      | Review                      |                 |                           |
|    | astonishing               | ranges                      | tools           | senses                    |
|    | cope                      | projects                    | rolls           | layers                    |
|    | flood                     | colony                      | mild            | surface                   |
| 1. | If you don't like         | cold winters, you           | should move t   | o a limit of the first    |
|    |                           | climate.                    |                 |                           |
| 2. | A carpenter cann          | ot work without _           |                 | *:                        |
| 3. | Your biological c         | lock has an                 |                 | effect on your body.      |
| 4. | In cold climates,         | it makes sense to           | wear several _  |                           |
|    | of clothing.              |                             |                 |                           |
| 5. | Dust on the               | 0                           | f a photovoltai | c cell makes it           |
|    | work inefficiently        | y.                          |                 |                           |
| 6. | Hearing is one of         | f the five                  |                 |                           |
| 7. | A ball or other ro        | ound object                 |                 |                           |

8. The temperature here \_\_\_\_\_ from 30°F to 90°F.

| 9. Biospheres are special  | at some environmental                       |
|--|---|
| research laboratories.   |   |
| 10. It's difficult to  | _ when several bad things happen at         |
| the same time.   |   |
| d True/False/Not Enough Info   | rmation                                     |
| 1. Jet lag occurs when your  | body is in one time zone but your           |
| biological clock is in anot  | her.  |
| 2. Plants begin producing no   | utrients when the sun rises.                |
| 3. Plants in Iceland and Green   | enland can produce nutrients                |
| twenty-four hours a day of   | during the summer.                          |
| 4. A biological clock gives by   | irds the signal that it is time to migrate. |
| 5. Animals that live near the  | e sea search for food at night when it      |
| is safer.  |   |
| 6. The honeybees in the expe   | eriment reset their biological clocks.      |
| 7. After a few days, the bees  | probably changed their biological           |
| clocks to New York time.   |   |
| 8. The human biological close  | ck affects many parts of the body.          |
| 9. Humans cannot change the  | neir biological clocks once they are set,   |
| but bees can.  |   |
| 10. You can decrease the effect  | ts of jet lag.                              |
| <b>2</b> √8  |   |
| Comprehension Questions  |   |
| 1 What makes desert plants produce   | sende?                                      |
| <ol> <li>What makes desert plants produce</li> <li>Why do birds wake at dawn?</li> </ol> | Seeus:                                      |
| 3. How do honeybees know when a f  | lower opens?                                |
| 4. Why do honeybees want to know v   | -   |
| 5 What is the time difference between  | n New York and Paris?                       |



215

the day you leave?

6. Why should you wear loose clothing on a long flight?

7. Why should you have breakfast at breakfast time in the new time zone on



#### Main Idea

Copy or write a sentence for the main idea of each of these paragraphs.

- 1. Paragraph 4 (lines 16–24)
- 2. Paragraph 8 (lines 42-54)
- 3. Paragraph 9 (lines 55–60)
- 4. Paragraph 11 (lines 68-76)



## Word Forms: Adjectives

Both the **-ing** form of the verb (the present participle) and the **-ed** form (the past participle) are used as adjectives. The **-ed** form often shows that the noun received the action, or it describes how a person feels. The **-ing** form often shows some action that the noun took, or it describes an object or possibly a person. However, there are many exceptions.

David was bored because the movie was boring.

Tome is interested in stamps. He thinks stamps are interesting.

Mary is an **interesting** person because she can talk about a lot of different things.

Put the right participle form of the verb in parentheses in each sentence.

- 1. Climbing a mountain is (exhaust) \_\_\_\_\_\_ work.
- 2. Al was (exhaust) \_\_\_\_\_\_ after the soccer game.
- 3. Mr. Davis is a very (demand) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ teacher. He makes the students work hard and do their best.
- 4. There are two kinds of electric current, direct and (alternate) \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 5. The (trap) \_\_\_\_\_ animal couldn't escape.
- 6. A (damage) \_\_\_\_\_ car needs to be fixed.
- 7. Children like to play (guess) \_\_\_\_\_\_ games.
- 8. The breakup of their marriage was a (surprise)

event.

- 9. American football is a (complicate) \_\_\_\_\_\_ game.
- 10. Being in an airplane crash is a (terrify) \_\_\_\_\_\_ experience.





#### Word Forms: Semi-

**Semi-** is a prefix that means *half* or *partly*. These are some common words with this prefix:

semicircle
semicolon (;)
semitransparent
semifinal (describing the next-to-last round in sports competitions);
semifinalist
semitropical (Hawaii is semitropical, but it is not in the tropics.)
semiyearly (twice a year)
semiretired
semiprivate (describing a hospital room with beds for two or
three patients)
semiprecious

Use five of these words in interesting sentences.



## Prepositions

Put the right preposition in each blank.

| uı | the right preposition in each ownk.                             |
|----|---|
| 1. | If you have ever flown several time zones, you have experienced |
|    | jet lag.  |
| 2. | You arrived a new time zone, but your body was still living     |
|    | the time the old zone.  |
| 3. | You were wide awake and ready dinner the middle                 |
|    | the night.  |
| 4. | Plants and animals are all rhythm the natural divisions         |
|    | time.   |
| 5. | the temperate zones the Earth, trees lose their leaves          |
|    | the fall as the days grow shorter.                              |
| 6. | Plants the desert may appear dead months or even years.         |
| 7. | Some animals depend the sea for their food.                     |
| 8. | Some insects wake up night.                                     |
|    |   |



217

| 9. Honeybees can tell the p  | osition the sun exactly when their                   |
|--|--|
| favorite flowers open.   | box omerbrok 🕮                                       |
| 10. Scientists put out sugar water ex  | very morning 10:00 and                               |
| noon.  |  |
|  |  |
| Connecting Words   |  |
| Use since, when, until, or even thoug with one from the second column.                 | <b>h</b> to connect a sentence from the first column |
| 1. The bees were ready to eat their  | a. It was only 3:00 p.m. in New York.                |
| evening meal.  | b. It kept her awake.                                |
| 2. It has been snowing.  | c. It becomes dusty.                                 |
| 3. Chris stopped drinking coffee   | d. The sun went down.                                |
| in the evening.  | e. The sun rises.                                    |
| <ul><li>4. Birds start singing.</li><li>5. A photovoltaic cell is efficient.</li></ul> |  |
| o. Trphotovolaic cen is efficient.   |  |
| Company  |  |
| Sequence   |  |
| Put these sentences about the French exp   | periment in the right order.                         |
| a. The scientists took the bee   | s to New York.                                       |
| b. Some French scientists did  | an experiment.                                       |
| c. They put the sugar water  | out at 8:00 p.m.                                     |
| d. They put the sugar water  | out at 10:00 a.m. and at noon.                       |
| e. The bees looked for food a  | t 3:00 p.m. New York time.                           |
| f. The bees took a week to fi  | nd the food at a different time.                     |
| g. The bees came every even  | ing at 8:00 p.m.                                     |



## **Guided Writing**

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. What does biological clock mean? Give examples.
- 2. Describe a time when you experienced jet lag.



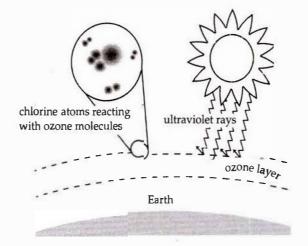
# **Video Highlights**



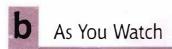
#### Before You Watch

- 1. Use your own knowledge and a world map to discuss these questions.
  - a. Which hemisphere of the Earth do you live in, the Northern Hemisphere or the Southern Hemisphere?
  - b. Is it safe or dangerous to spend a lot of time in direct sunlight? Why?
  - c. What are some of the things people use that cause damage to the Earth's atmosphere?
- 2. The paragraph below describes a chemical process that takes place in the Earth's atmosphere. Use the diagram to fill in the missing words.

The ozone layer is part of the atmosphere that surrounds the Earth. It is made up of ozone  $(O_3)$  molecules, which form a protective shield against the \_\_\_\_\_\_ rays of the sun. Some of the things people use every day are causing serious damage to the ozone layer. For example, chemicals used for air conditioning and refrigerators release harmful chlorine (Cl) molecules into the atmosphere. The chlorine molecules react with the \_\_\_\_\_ molecules to break them down. This process gradually eats up the ozone layer.







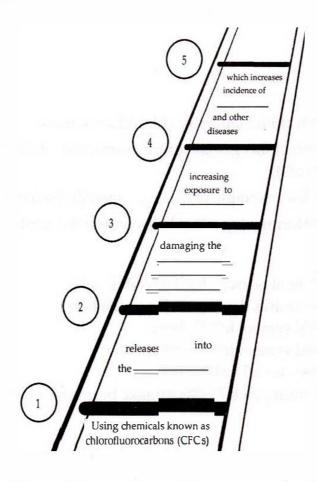
According to the scientists in the video, which of the following is the main cause of damage to the ozone layer?

- flights over the Northern Hemisphere
- \_\_ ultraviolet rays from the sun
- widespread use of manmade chemicals

# C After You Watch

- 1. Start from the bottom of this "ladder." Each cause leads to an effect, which in turn causes another effect. Fill in the missing words.
- 2. Using the cause and effect ladder you completed, explain to a partner how using certain chemicals can cause harm to all living things.

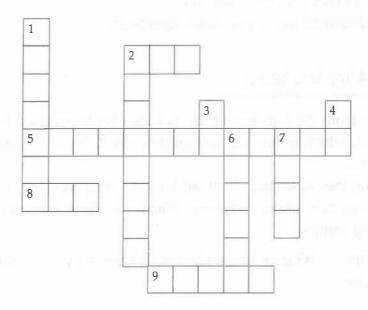
*Example:* When you use chemicals known as CFCs, they release . . .





# **Activity Page**

#### **Chemical Crossword Puzzle**



#### Across

- 2. Common abbreviation for chlorofluorocarbon
- 5. Too much of this gas can cause destruction of the rain forest (two words).
- 8. Silicon is an example of a \_\_\_\_\_-metallic element.
- 9. This gas forms a layer that helps protect the Earth from the sun.

#### Down

- 1. This element is used in photovoltaic cells.
- 2. This gas causes damage to the ozone layer.
- 3. Chemical symbol for #1 down
- 4. Chemical symbol for #7 down
- 6. Necessary for all animal life
- 7. A very strong metal used to make beams for skyscrapers

# Dictionary Page

## **Doing Dictionary Research**

1. Look up the word *geothermal* in your dictionary. How many other words do you see that begin with *geo-*?

**ge·og·ra·phy** /dʒi'agrəfi/ n. 1 the scientific study of the earth's surface, features, climate, people, etc.: I bought a new atlas for my geography class. 2 the way parts of a place are positioned within it, (syn.) layout: I can't meet you inside the mall because I don't know the geography of the place, and I might get lost. -adj. **geographic**/,djiə'græfik/.

**ge·ol·o·gy** /di'aladi/ n. the scientific study of the earth through its rocks, soil, etc.: In geology we studied the rocks and deserts of California. -n.

geologist; -adj. geologic /ˌʤiəˈluʤɪk/.

ge·o·met·ric / dia metrik / adj. with regular shapes and lines: The mosque's walls are decorated with geometric designs.

**ge·om·e·try** / $\frac{1}{2}$ i'amətri/ n. the study in mathematics of lines, angles, shapes, etc.: It is important to study

geometry if you want to be an architect.

ge·o·phys·ics / diou'fiziks/ n.pl. used with a sing. v. the study in geology that uses physics to examine the movements and activities of the earth

ge·o·pol·i·tics / diou'paletiks/ n.pl. used with a sing. v. the study of how geography affects the

politics of a country

**ge·o·ther·mal** / καίου θ3rməl / adj. related to heat found deep inside the earth: The geysers in Yellowstone National Park are geothermal because of hot water coming from inside the earth. See: geyser.



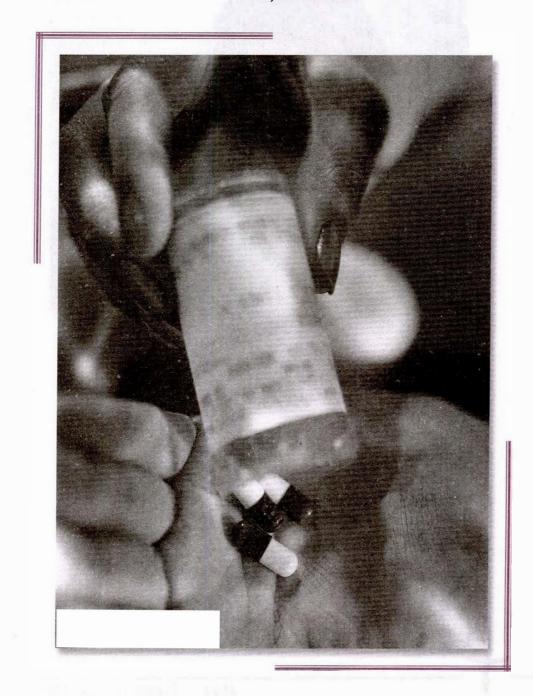
- 2. This dictionary page has seven words beginning with *geo*. Read their definitions and answer the following questions.
  - a. How are the meanings of the words *geography*, *geology*, *geometric*, *geophysics*, and *geopolitics* alike?
  - b. What do you think the prefix geo- means?
- 3. Look up the words *psychology, microscopic,* and *semiconductor* in your dictionary. Look for other words nearby that have related meanings. Then complete the chart below.

| Word          | Related Word          | Prefix | Meaning             |
|---------------|-----------------------|--------|---------------------|
| psychology    | psychopath<br>psychic | psych- | related to the mind |
| microscopic   | 244                   |        | Told you            |
|               |                       |        |                     |
| semiconductor |                       |        | ir sam man          |
|               |                       |        |                     |

# Medicine and Health

Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise.

—Benjamin Franklin



## **Headaches**

lesson



## Before You Read

- 1. How often do you have a headache?
- 2. What causes you to have a headache?
- 3. How do you treat your headaches?



## **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

- 1. Sometimes headaches start with a change in **vision**. The person sees wavy lines, black dots, or bright spots in front of the eyes.
- 2. Some headaches cause **blurred** vision, and you can't read or drive.
- 3. Cluster headaches come in clusters, or groups, for two or three months.
- 4. If you have a headache and it continues over several days, or keeps **recurring**, it is time to talk to a doctor.

## 1 Headaches

Some little man is inside your head, **pounding** on your brain with a **hammer**. Beside him, a rock musician is playing a drum. Your head feels as if it is going to explode. You have a **headache**, and you think it will

5 never go away.

Doctors say that there are several kinds of headaches. Each kind begins in a different place and needs a different treatment. One kind of headache starts in the **arteries** in the head. The arteries <u>swell</u> and send **pain** signals to the brain. Sometimes these headaches start

signals to the brain. Sometimes these headaches start with a change in <u>vision</u>. The person sees wavy lines, black dots, or bright spots in front of the eyes. This is a <u>warning</u> that a headache is coming. The headache occurs on only one side of the head. Vision is **blurred**, and the

person may **vomit** from the pain. These headaches, which are called **migraine** headaches, are more frequent in women than in men. Sleep is the best cure for them.





get larger

ability to see; sight



221

Cluster headaches, which also start in the arteries, are called cluster headaches because they come in clusters, or groups, for two or three months. Then there are no more for several months or even years. A cluster headache lasts up to two hours and then goes away. At the beginning of the headache, the eyes are red and watery. There is a <u>steady</u> pain in the head. When the pain finally goes away, the head is <u>sore</u>. Men have more cluster headaches than women do.

continuing painful



The muscle headache, which starts in the muscles in the neck or **forehead**, is caused by **tension**. A person works too hard, is nervous about something, or has problems at work, at school, or at home. The neck and head muscles become tense, and the headache starts. A muscle headache usually starts in the morning and gets worse as the hours pass. There is a steady pain, pressure, and a bursting feeling. Usually **aspirin** doesn't help a muscle headache very much.

How do doctors treat headaches? If a person has frequent headaches, the doctor first has to decide what kind they are. Medicine can help, but there are other ways to treat them.

The doctor asks the patient to **analyze** his or her daily living patterns. A change in diet or an increase in exercise might stop the headaches. If the **patient** realizes that difficulties at home, at work, or at school are causing the tension, it might be possible to make **lifestyle** 

or changes and decrease these problems. Psychological problems and even medicine for another **physical** problem can cause headaches. The doctor has to discuss and analyze all these patterns in the patient's life. A headache can also be a signal of a more serious problem.

50 serious problem.

Everyone has headaches from time to time. In the United States alone, up to 50 million people each year go to the doctor because of headaches. If you have a headache and it continues over several days, or keeps

recurring, it is time to talk to a doctor. There is no magic cure for headaches, but recent research allows doctors to control most of them.

of the body

occurring again



## **a** Vocabulary

|     | pounded clusters                                       | swells              | lifestyle<br>forehead | migraine<br>aspirin                     |  |
|-----|--|---------------------|-----------------------|---|--|
|     | recur  | sore<br>analyze     | pain                  | hammer                                  |  |
| 1.  |  | •                   | o happen again.       |   |  |
|     |  |                     | , it hurts. You hav   |   |  |
|     | •  | in your arm         |                       |   |  |
| 3.  |  |                     | op part of the face.  |   |  |
| 4.  |  |                     | kinds of headaches    |   |  |
|     |  |                     | oartment, we knock    |   |  |
|     |  |                     | r, but no one answer  |   |  |
| 6.  |  |                     |                       |   |  |
|     |  | is one kii          |                       |   |  |
|     |  |                     |                       | until it fits                           |  |
|     | the wheel exac   |                     |                       |   |  |
| 9.  |  | •                   | ts gathered in small  | _ 96-3                                  |  |
|     | to talk about it.                                      |                     | 8                     |   |  |
| 10. | Even though he   | e is very rich, his | con c                 | is just like an                         |  |
|     | ordinary perso   |                     |                       | 111111111111111111111111111111111111111 |  |
| 11. |  |                     | uld                   | the                                     |  |
|     | situation carefu                                       |                     |                       |   |  |
|     |  | ,                   |                       |   |  |
| b   | Vocabulary   |                     |                       |   |  |
| а   | che  | warned              | blurred               | arteries                                |  |
| 7   | omit   | hammer              | physical              | swell                                   |  |
| S   | teady  | patients            | vision                | tense                                   |  |
| 1.  | When you are s   | sick and in pain, y | our stomach may pr    | rotest and make                         |  |
|     | you  | ,                   |                       |   |  |
| 2.  | 2. The teacher the children that they had to behave or |                     |                       |   |  |
|     | there would be no party.                               |                     |                       |   |  |
| 3.  | Sick people in t                                       | he hospital are ca  | lled                  |   |  |
|     |  |                     |                       |   |  |

Instagram:@IELTS\_Matters

| 4. While Pat was swimr                                  |                    | er in her eye. Everyt | thing looked |
|---|--------------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| 5. Students often feel _                                |                    | _ before an importa   | nt exam.     |
| 6. A complete   |                    |                       |              |
| entering the army.                                      |                    | - dian                | 100 .5       |
| 7. The farmers were hap                                 | opy when a         | rain                  | continued    |
| all night.  |                    |                       |              |
| 8   | carry blood from t | the heart to the rest | of the body. |
| 9. You may get a stomad                                 |                    |                       |              |
| 0. People with poor                                     |                    | wear glasses or con   | tact lenses. |
| Vocabulary Revie  | ew: Antonyms       |                       |              |
| Match the opposites.                                    |                    |                       |              |
| 1. fiction  | a. point           |                       |              |
| 2. scatter  | b. import          |                       |              |
| 3. active   | c. nonfiction      |                       |              |
| 4. reluctant  | d. ordinary        |                       |              |
| 5. unique   | e. microscope      |                       |              |
| 6. last   | f. run out         |                       |              |
| 7. export   | g. gather          |                       |              |
| 8. loose  | h. increase        |                       |              |
| 9. fast   | i. inactive        |                       |              |
| 10. lessen  | j. eager           |                       |              |
|   | k. feast           |                       |              |
|   | l. tight           |                       |              |
|   |                    |                       |              |
| Multiple Choice   |                    |                       |              |
| When someone sees bla a. blurring b. clusters c. vision |                    |                       |              |

| 2.   | A migraine headache causes   | test spilet w |
|------|--|---------------|
|      | a. blurred vision  |               |
|      | b. red and watery eyes   |               |
|      | c. a bursting feeling  |               |
| 3.   | is the best cure for migraines.  |               |
|      | a. Sleep   |               |
|      | b. Aspirin   |               |
|      | c. Arteries  |               |
| 4.   | have more headaches that leave the h   | ead sore.     |
|      | a. Women   |               |
|      | b. Men   |               |
|      | c. Older people  |               |
| 5.   | A headache starts in the morning and   | gets worse.   |
|      | a. migraine  | O             |
|      | b. cluster   |               |
|      | c. muscle  |               |
| 6.   | Tension causes a headache.   |               |
|      | a. migraine  |               |
|      | b. cluster   |               |
|      | c. muscle  |               |
| 7.   | Medicine is headaches.   |               |
|      | a. the best treatment for  |               |
|      | b. not usually helpful for   |               |
|      | c. one way to treat  |               |
| 8.   | A change in a patient's lifestyle can  |               |
|      | a. help cure headaches   |               |
|      | b. cause headaches   |               |
|      | c. both a and b  |               |
|      |  |               |
| 77   | Comprehension Questions  |               |
| . Th | e de la constant de l |               |
|      |  |               |

- 1. Describe a migraine headache.
- 2. Describe a cluster headache.
- 3. Describe a muscle headache.
- 4. Which kind of headache affects more women than men?

- 5. What are some things that can cause a muscle headache?
- 6. If you have a headache, will aspirin help?
- 7. Why does a doctor analyze the life patterns of a headache patient?
- 8. How many people each year in the United States go to a doctor for headaches?



#### Main Idea

Write the main idea of each of these paragraphs.

- 1. Paragraph 2 (lines 6-17)
- 2. Paragraph 3 (lines 18-26)
- 3. Paragraph 7 (lines 51-57)



## Word Forms

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

| 3.  | Verb    | Noun       | Adjective           | Adverb                  |
|-----|---------|------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| 1.  | press   | pressure   |                     |                         |
| 2.  |         | reluctance | reluctant           | reluctantly             |
| 3.  | migrate | migration  | migrant             |                         |
| 4.  | lessen  | least      | less                |                         |
| 5.  | warn    | warning    |                     |                         |
| 6.  | pain    | pain       | painful<br>painless | painfully<br>painlessly |
| 7.  | swell   | swelling   | swollen             |                         |
| 8.  | recur   | recurrence | recurrent           | recurrently             |
| 9.  | tense   | tension    | tense               | tensely                 |
| 10. | prove   | proof      | proven              |                         |

| 1.  | Mr. Johnson has high blood              | He has to take medicine        |
|-----|---|--------------------------------|
|     | every day.                              | " manuacing provided in        |
| 2.  | She agreed to pl                        | ay basketball.                 |
| 3.  | Scientists study the                    | of birds.                      |
| 4.  | The pain of some headaches is           | by aspirin.                    |
| 5.  | A fire alarm is a                       | to leave the building.         |
| 6.  | A broken arm is                         |                                |
| 7.  | Dan hurt his hand, and now it is        | and the control of             |
| 8.  | After the fifth of                      | a bad headache, Mark went to   |
|     | a doctor.                               |                                |
| 9.  | causes muscle h                         | eadaches.                      |
| 10. | Scientists havet                        | hat photovoltaic cells convert |
|     | sunlight directly into energy. This was | ssome                          |
|     | years ago.                              |                                |
|     |   |                                |

# h

## Scanning

Scan the text to assign each of these sentences to the correct column. In the correct column, write the number of the line in the text where you found the idea.

|  | Migraine        | Cluster   | Muscle  |
|--|-----------------|-----------|---------|
| a. They come in groups.                    |                 | Latel dia |         |
| b. It starts in the neck or forehead.      | -               | i compet  |         |
| c. It is caused by tension.                | V - V           |           | a Local |
| d. There is a change in vision.            | The Property of | 30        | -54     |
| e. There may not be any for several years. |                 |           |         |
| f. Aspirin doesn't help.                   |                 |           |         |
| g. Sleep helps.                            |                 |           |         |
| h. It occurs on only one side of the head. |                 |           |         |
| i. It lasts for two hours or less.         |                 |           |         |
| j. Problems at work can cause it.          |                 |           |         |



Lesson 1: Headaches



## Noun Substitutes

What do these words stand for?

| 1. | page 227 | line 2 | him |     |
|----|----------|--------|-----|-----|
|    | 1 -0 -   |        |     | · · |

- 2. page 227 line 3 it \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 3. page 227 line 12 **this** \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. page 227 line 17 **them** \_\_\_\_\_
- 5. page 228 line 18 **which** \_\_\_\_\_
- 6. page 228 line 27 **which** \_\_\_\_\_
- 7. page 228 lines 40 **his or her** \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 8. page 228 line 57 **them** \_\_\_\_\_



#### **Articles**

Put articles in the blanks if they are necessary.

- 1. Beside him, \_\_\_\_\_ rock musician is playing \_\_\_\_\_ drum.
- 2. Each kind begins in \_\_\_\_\_\_ different place and needs \_\_\_\_\_ different treatment.
- 3. One kind of headache starts in \_\_\_\_\_ arteries in \_\_\_\_ head.
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_ arteries swell and send \_\_\_\_\_ pain signals to \_\_\_\_\_ brain.
- 5. Sometimes these headaches start with a change in \_\_\_\_\_ vision.
- 6. person sees \_\_\_\_\_ wavy lines, \_\_\_\_\_ black dots, or \_\_\_\_\_ bright spots in front of \_\_\_\_\_ eyes.
- 7. This is \_\_\_\_\_ warning that \_\_\_\_\_ headache is coming.
- 8. \_\_\_\_\_headache occurs on only one side of \_\_\_\_\_head.
- 9. \_\_\_\_\_ vision is blurred, and \_\_\_\_\_ person may vomit from \_\_\_\_ pain.
- 10. \_\_\_\_\_sleep is \_\_\_\_\_best cure for them.



## Verb + Adjective

Adjectives usually follow these verbs: be, feel, become, seem, act, appear, look, smell, taste.

She is sick.

He appears tired.

She feels sick.

He looks tired.

She became sick a week ago.

It smells good.

He seems tired.

It tastes good.

He acts tired.

Use each verb in an interesting sentence.



## **Guided Writing**

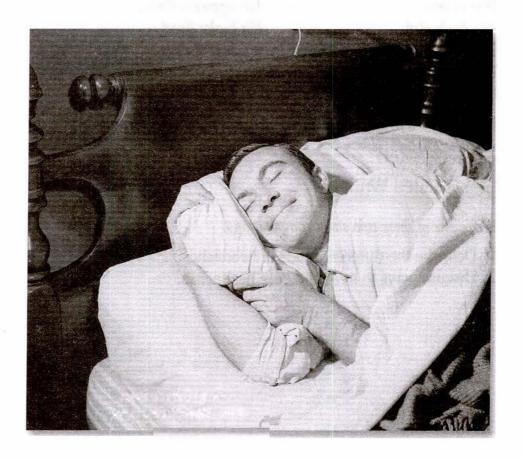
Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. Describe the different kinds of headaches.
- 2. Discuss ways to treat and cure headaches.

# **Sleep and Dreams**

lesson

2



## **Before You Read**

- 1. How often do you dream?
- 2. Do you walk in your sleep?
- 3. Why do you think we dream?



## **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

- 1. Scientists have learned a great deal by studying people as they sleep, but there is still much that they don't understand.
- 2. Your brain never really sleeps. It is never actually blank.
- 3. During a dream, the brain may **concentrate** on a problem and look for different solutions.
- 4. Some people grind their teeth while they sleep. They wake up with a sore **jaw** or a headache.
- 5. Lots of people take sleeping pills, but these are dangerous because they can be **addictive**. If you take them for several weeks, it is hard to stop taking them.

# 2 Sleep and Dreams



Sleep is very important to humans; the average person spends 220,000 hours of his or her lifetime sleeping. Doctors and scientists have learned <u>a great</u> <u>deal</u> in the last thirty years by studying people as they sleep, but there is still much that they don't understand.

a lot

Scientists study the body characteristics that change during sleep, such as body temperature, brain waves, blood pressure, breathing, and heartbeat. They also study rapid eye movement (REM). These scientists have

10 learned that there is a kind of sleep with REM and another kind with no rapid eye movement (NREM).

NREM is divided into three **stages**. In stage one, when you start to go to sleep, you have a pleasant floating feeling. A sudden noise can wake you up. In

15 stage two, you sleep more deeply, and a noise will



probably not wake you. In stage three, which you reach in less than thirty minutes, the brain waves are less active and stretched out. Then, within another half hour, you reach REM sleep. This stage might last an hour and a half and is the time when you dream. For the rest of the night, REM and NREM sleep alternate.

Sleep is a biological need, but your brain never really sleeps. It is never actually **blank**. The things that were on your mind during the day are still there at night. They appear as dreams. At times, people believed that dreams had magical powers or that they could tell the future.

Sometimes dreams are terrifying, but they are usually a collection of scattered, <u>confused</u> thoughts. If you dream about something that is worrying you, you may wake up exhausted, <u>sweating</u>, and with a rapid heartbeat. Dreams can have positive effects on our lives. During a dream, the brain may <u>concentrate</u> on a problem and look for different solutions. Also, people who dream during a good night's sleep are more likely to remember newly learned skills. In other words, you learn better if you dream.

Researchers say that normal people may have four or five REM <u>periods</u> of dreaming a night. The first one may begin only a half hour after they fall asleep. Each period of dreaming is a little longer, the final one lasting up to an hour. Dreams also become more <u>intense</u> as the night continues. <u>Nightmares</u> usually occur toward dawn.

Certain people can control some of their dreams and make sure they have a happy ending. Some people get relief from bad dreams by writing them down and then changing the negative stories or thoughts into positive ones on paper. Then they study the paper before they go to sleep again.

Sleepwalking is most common among children.
They usually grow out of it by the time they become
adolescents. Children don't remember that they were
walking in their sleep, and they don't usually wake up
if the parent leads them back to bed.

Some people have a **habit** of grinding their teeth while they sleep. They wake up with a sore **jaw** or a headache, and they can also damage their teeth.



mixed up

think hard

lengths of time

very strong bad dreams

teenagers



Researchers don't know why people talk, walk, or grind their teeth while they are asleep.

There are lots of jokes about **snoring**, but it isn't really funny. People snore because they have trouble breathing while they are asleep. Some snorers have a condition called sleep apnea. They stop breathing up to thirty or forty times an hour because the throat muscles relax too much and **block** the airway. Then they breathe in some air and start snoring. This is a dangerous condition because, if the brain is without oxygen for four minutes, there will be **permanent** brain damage. Sleep apnea can also cause irregular heartbeats, high blood pressure, and a general lack of energy.

Most people need from 7½ to 8½ hours of sleep a night, but this varies with the individual. Babies sleep eighteen hours, and old people need less sleep than younger people. If someone continually sleeps longer than normal for no <u>apparent</u> reason, there may be something physically or psychologically wrong.

What should you do if you have trouble sleeping? Lots of people take sleeping pills, but these are dangerous because they can be **addictive**. If you take them for several weeks, it is hard to stop taking them.

Doctors say the best thing is to try to relax and to avoid bad habits. Caffeine keeps people awake, so don't drink anything with caffeine in the evening. Smoking and alcohol can also keep you awake. You may have trouble sleeping if you have a heavy meal just before you go to bed.

You may also have trouble sleeping if you have something on your mind. Try to relax. If you are thinking about a problem or about something exciting that is going to happen the next day, get up and write about it. That will help take it off your mind. You can also get up and read or watch television. Be sure to choose a book or show that is not too exciting, or you may get so interested that you won't want to go to sleep even when you feel sleepy.

Sleep is important to humans. We spend a third of our lives sleeping, so we need to understand everything we can about sleep. Sweet dreams!

lasting forever

obvious; adjective for appear

75

## **a** Vocabulary

|     | stage                | periods           | snore                    | habit                 |
|-----|----------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|
|     | blank                | nightmare         | confused                 | block                 |
|     | a great deal         | relief            | sweat                    | concentrate           |
| 1   | . It is hard to $\_$ | 4-1-1             | on your homeworl         | k if your roommate is |
|     | playing loud i       | nusic.            |                          |                       |
| 2   | . The instructor     | asked everyone    | e to take out a          | piece of              |
|     | paper.               |                   |                          | with Black to the     |
| 3.  |                      |                   | _ of a volcanic eruption | on, the volcano sends |
|     | out smoke.           |                   | per la Juli lung I       |                       |
| 4.  | . A                  | is a ba           | d dream.                 |                       |
| 5.  | . Do you             | 1914 2 14 12      | oudly when you sleep     | ?                     |
|     | •                    |                   | several                  |                       |
|     | each class.          | d m               |                          |                       |
| 7.  | It's a               | wh                | en the sun comes out a   | after a bad storm.    |
|     |                      |                   | of having a cup of       |                       |
|     | gets home from       |                   |                          |                       |
| 9.  | ·                    |                   | ordinate software the    |                       |
|     |                      |                   | costs                    |                       |
| 20. | Timerecaes B         | one is a car that |                          |                       |
| b   | Vocabulary           |                   |                          |                       |
|     | confused             | concentrate       | intense                  | adolescents           |
|     | jaws                 | blank             | apparently               | addictive             |
|     | habit                | block             | permanently              | relieve               |
| 1.  | The teeth are in     | the upper and l   | lower                    | Andrea a steel        |
| 2.  | The                  | sumn              | ner heat of the Arabian  | Desert can be very    |
|     | dangerous if yo      |                   |                          | burnship of the       |
|     |                      |                   | traffic on a hig         | ghway.                |
|     |                      |                   | about the date, so he    | -                     |
|     |                      |                   | when you are tryi        |                       |
|     | at the same time     |                   |                          |                       |

| 6. An immigrant plans to     | stay in a new country  |
|------------------------------|--|
| 7. The professor seems to    | be very busy, he has a lot of  |
| work to do.                  |  |
| 8 are                        | e not children, but they are not grown up either.  |
| 9. Smoking is                | , so it's better not to even start smoking.  |
|                              |  |
| C Vocabulary Review          | w: Definitions   |
| Match the words with the def | finitions.   |
| 1. melt                      | a. middle  |
| 2. mid-                      | b. soreness  |
| 3. strip                     | c. fingerprint   |
| 4. export                    | d. reasonable  |
| 5. pain                      | e. with no moving parts  |
| 6. inexhaustible             | f. change from a solid to a liquid   |
| 7. solid-state               | g. not able to be seen through   |
| 8. source                    | h. because   |
| 9. transparent               | i. long, thin piece  |
| 10. boundary                 | j. place   |
| 11. since                    | k. sell to other countries   |
| 12. position                 | l. not able to be used up  |
| 13. astonishing              | m. place something comes from  |
|                              | n. border  |
|                              | o. surprising  |
|                              |  |
| True/False/Not End           | ough Information   |
| 1. We spend abou             | t a third of our lives sleeping.   |
| •                            | w understand nearly everything about sleep.  |
|                              | mes before the REM stage.  |
|                              | stages of NREM, REM lasts the rest of the night.   |
|                              | luring the REM stage, but the brain is normally  |
| blank the rest of            |  |
| 6. A dream about             | an unhappy event can change your heartbeat.  |
|                              | THE PERSON NAMED IN TAXABLE PROPERTY OF THE PE |
|                              | \$ 24  |

7. Nightmares occur early, when dreams are short.
8. Sleep apnea is the cause of some snoring.
9. Five or six hours of sleep is enough for some people.
10. The best thing to do when you have trouble sleeping is to take sleeping pills.



#### Comprehension Questions

- 1. How have researchers learned about sleep?
- 2. What does REM mean?
- 3. How do dreams change as the sleep period continues?
- 4. Can sleepwalking be dangerous? Give a reason for your answer.
- 5. Why do some people grind their teeth while they sleep?
- 6. How can sleep apnea cause brain damage?
- 7. Name three things that can keep you awake.
- 8. How does a problem keep you from sleeping?



#### Main Idea

Find or write a sentence for the main idea of each of these paragraphs.

- 1. Paragraph 3 (lines 12–21)
- 2. Paragraph 4 (lines 22–26)
- 3. Paragraph 6 (lines 36–41)
- 4. Paragraph 11 (lines 69–74)



#### Scanning

Write short answers for these questions and the line numbers on which you found the answers.

- 1. In what stage of NREM sleep can a sudden noise wake you up?
- 2. Why do people snore?
- 3. Why is it a bad idea to take sleeping pills?
- 4. How many REM periods of dreaming do people normally have?
- 5. What did some people believe about dreams?
- 6. What should you do if you can't sleep because you are thinking about an exciting event the next day?
- 7. Is it possible to control dreams?
- 8. How many hours a day do babies sleep?





#### Connecting Words

Use **before**, **after**, **although**, or **since** to connect a sentence from the first column with one in the second.

- 1. Scientists don't know everything about sleep.
- 2. We shouldn't laugh about snoring.
- 3. Don't eat a heavy meal.
- 4. Go to bed and get up at about the same time.
- 5. The REM stage begins.

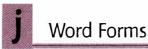
- a. You go to bed.
- b. It isn't really funny.
- c. The NREM stage begins.
- d. They have learned a lot in the last thirty years.
- e. This sets a rhythm in your life.



#### Missing Words

Write any word that is correct in each blank.

- 1. Sleep is very important \_\_\_\_\_ humans; \_\_\_\_ average person spends 220,000 hours of his or her lifetime sleeping.
- 2. They have learned \_\_\_\_\_ great deal \_\_\_\_ studying people as they sleep.
- 3. Scientists study \_\_\_\_\_ body characteristics that change \_\_\_\_ sleep.
- 4. NREM \_\_\_\_\_ divided \_\_\_\_ three stages.
- 5. You reach stage three \_\_\_\_\_ less \_\_\_\_ thirty minutes.
- 6. Sleep is \_\_\_\_\_ biological need, \_\_\_\_ your brain never really sleeps.
- 7. \_\_\_\_\_ things that were \_\_\_\_\_ your mind during \_\_\_\_\_ day are still there \_\_\_\_\_ night.
- 8. \_\_\_\_\_ times, people believed \_\_\_\_\_ dreams had magical powers \_\_\_\_\_ that they could tell \_\_\_\_\_ future.
- 9. Dreams can have \_\_\_\_\_ positive effects \_\_\_\_ our lives.

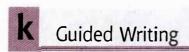


Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

|     | Verb        | Noun                | Adjective    | Adverb              |
|-----|-------------|---------------------|--------------|---------------------|
| 1.  | convert     | conversion          |              | well have about the |
| 2.  |             | habit               | habitual     | habitually          |
| 3.  | concentrate | concentration       | concentrated |                     |
| 4.  | confuse     | confusion           | confused     |                     |
| 5.  |             | intensity           | intense      | intensely           |
| 6.  |             | adolescence         | adolescent   |                     |
| 7.  | breathe     | breath<br>breathing | breathless   | breathlessly        |
| 8.  |             | permanence          | permanent    | permanently         |
| 9.  | loosen      | looseness           | loose        | loosely             |
| 10. | (dis)appear | (dis)appearance     | apparent     | apparently          |

| 1. | You can your money into dollars at the bank.                          |
|----|---|
| 2. | The present tense is used for actions.                                |
| 3. | a. Great is necessary for the game of chess.                          |
|    | b. Most of Australia's population is on the                           |
|    | east coast.   |
| 4. | There was a lot of about the new class schedule, but                  |
|    | now it is all cleared up and things are going smoothly. At first, the |
|    | students were   |
| 5. | Susan feels everything very   |
| 6. | is a difficult time for some young Americans and                      |
|    | their parents.  |
| 7. | Tom spoke because he was so excited.                                  |
|    |   |

| 8.  | Nora married a German ar   | nd is going to live                      |
|-----|----------------------------|--|
|     | in Germany.                |  |
| 9.  | Carol                      | her belt because it was too tight.       |
| 10. | The plane got in an hour a | go, but Mohammed didn't come through the |
|     | gate                       | he wasn't on it.                         |



Write one of these two short compositions. Paraphrase the information as much as possible.

- 1. When and why do we dream?
- 2. If a person has trouble sleeping, what can he or she do about it?

# lesson 3

## Health Care and Epidemics



#### Before You Read

- 1. When you are sick, do you take medicine? Why?
- 2. How can people prevent disease?
- 3. Have you ever been in a place that was having an epidemic? What did the people do about it?

#### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

- 1. Some diseases are caused by **viruses**. Viruses are even smaller than bacteria, and they cause different kinds of diseases.
- 2. People can be **cruel** to victims of disease. Sometimes they take away their jobs, throw them out of their apartments, and refuse them transportation.
- 3. Some diseases spread when people touch the same dishes, towels, and furniture. You can even **pick up** a disease when you touch things in public buildings.
- 4. One disease that causes frequent, worldwide epidemics is **influenza**, or flu for short. The symptoms of influenza include a headache and sometimes a runny nose.
- 5. About half of all flu patients have a high body temperature, called a **fever**.

## 3 Health Care and Epidemics



Everyone suffers from disease at some time or another. However, millions of people around the world do not have good health care. Sometimes they have no money to pay for medical treatment. Sometimes they

- 5 have money, but there is no doctor. Sometimes the doctor does not know how to treat the disease, and sometimes there is no treatment. Some people are afraid of doctors. When these conditions are present in large population centers, **epidemics** can start.
- Epidemics can change history. Exploration and wars cause different groups of people to come into contact with



each other. They carry strange diseases to each other. For example, when the Europeans first came to North and South America, they brought diseases with them that 15 killed about 95% of the Native American population.

People have all kinds of ideas about how to prevent and treat diseases. Some people think that if you eat lots of onions or garlic, you won't get sick. Others say that you should take huge amounts of vitamins. Scientific 20 experiments have not proved most of these theories. However, people still spend millions of dollars on vitamins and other probably useless treatments or preventatives. Some people want antibiotics whenever they get sick. Some antibiotics are very expensive. Much 25 of this money is wasted because some diseases are caused by viruses. Viruses are even smaller than bacteria, and they cause different kinds of diseases. Antibiotics are useless against viruses.

People are afraid of many diseases. Because of their 30 fear, people can be **cruel** to victims of disease. Sometimes they fire victims from their jobs, throw them out of their apartments, and refuse them transportation services. In the epidemics of **plague** a few hundred years ago, people simply covered the doors and windows of the victims' 35 houses and left them inside to die, all in an effort to

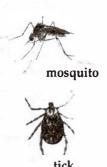
protect themselves from getting sick.

Doctors know how most epidemic diseases spread. Some, like **tuberculosis**, are spread when people **sneeze** and **cough**. The explosive cough or sneeze sends the 40 bacteria shooting out into the air. Then they enter the

mouth or nose of anyone nearby.

Others are spread through human contact. When you are sick and blow your nose, you get viruses or bacteria on your hands. Then you touch another 45 person's hand, and when that person touches his or her mouth, nose, or eyes, the disease enters the body. Some diseases spread when people touch the same dishes, towels, and furniture. You can even **pick up** a disease when you touch things in public buildings. Other 50 diseases are spread through insects, such as flies,

a very serious disease carried by insects



mosquitoes, and ticks.

One disease that causes frequent, worldwide epidemics is **influenza**, or flu for short. The symptoms of influenza include a headache and sometimes a runny nose. Some victims get sick to their stomach. These symptoms are similar to the symptoms of other, milder diseases. About half of all flu patients also have a high body temperature, called a **fever**. Influenza can be a very serious disease, especially for **pregnant** women, people over 65, and people already suffering from another disease such as a heart problem. Flu is very contagious. One person catches the flu from another person; it

Sometimes medicine can relieve the symptoms of a disease. That is, it can make people cough less, make headaches less intense, and stop noses from running for a while. However, medicine can't always cure a disease. So far, there is no cure for many diseases and no medicine to prevent them. People have to try to prevent them in other ways.

doesn't begin inside the body as heart disease does.

Some diseases can be prevented by **vaccination**. A liquid vaccine is **injected** into the arm or taken by mouth, and the person is then safe from catching that disease. Other diseases can be prevented by good health habits, such as drinking only clean water, **boiling** water that might carry disease, and washing the hands often.

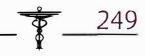
Epidemics usually start in areas of large population. Poor people in big cities who live crowded together in **miserable** conditions have the most health problems.

They often have the least education about disease prevention. If they know what to do, they often do not have the money to do it. For example, it is difficult for a person who has no electricity to refrigerate food or boil drinking water. With no money, the person can't even buy soap to wash his or her hands.

Disease prevention costs much less than disease treatment. It seems completely illogical, but some countries like the United States spend much more healthcare money on treatment for diseases than on programs to prevent disease in the first place. Most doctors and other hospital workers stay in their **institutions**. Only a



very bad; inferior



few doctors go out into the streets of the poor areas to educate people. Only a few doctors and some nurses vaccinate people and **supervise** them to make sure they take their medicine. Many people who help poor people with their health problems are volunteers.

How can you use all this information for your own good health? When someone you know becomes ill, try to avoid physical contact with that person. If you get sick yourself, keep your towel and dishes separate from everyone else's. Try not to touch things that belong to others. Don't touch other people, and don't shake hands. Explain why, however; you don't want people to think you are impolite. Wash your hands often if you are ill or if anyone around you is ill.

Researchers continue searching for a way to cure or prevent epidemic diseases. **Meanwhile**, it is worth the money for governments to provide preventive health care for all of their people. Preventing epidemics is much cheaper than stopping them.

## **a** Vocabulary

|    | cough<br>meanwhile | epidemics<br>picked up | cruel<br>sneeze     | institutions<br>miserable |
|----|--------------------|------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|
|    | plague             | antibiotics            | vaccinations        | influenza                 |
| 1. |                    | is also called flu     | hayran siy          |                           |
| 2. | Some diseases are  | e spread when peopl    | e                   | 600                       |
|    | and                |                        |                     |                           |
| 3. | When you have a    | headache, you prob     | ably feel           |                           |
| 4. | Babies should rec  | eive                   | to prevent co       | ommon childhood           |
|    | diseases. Then the | ey won't catch these   | diseases.           |                           |
| 5. | Governments sho    | ould provide health o  | are                 | , they                    |
|    | should give mone   | ey for new research i  | nto the causes of d | isease.                   |
| 6. |                    | kill thousands, e      | ven millions, of pe | eople worldwide.          |
|    |                    |                        |                     |                           |

| 7.  | Hospitals and u    | niversities are e | examples of               |                       |
|-----|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| 8.  | It is very         |                   | to put a sick person ou   | t of his or her house |
|     | into the street to | live.             |                           |                       |
| 9.  | The                | epide             | emics killed half the po  | pulation.             |
| 10. | If you take        |                   | too often, they will be   | ecome ineffective.    |
| 11. | She thinks she     |                   | the flu on the lon        | g flight to Europe.   |
| b   | Vocabulary         |                   |                           |                       |
|     | fever              | service           | tuberculosis              | supervise             |
|     | fire               | effort            | viruses                   | injected              |
|     | pregnant           | boil              | mosquitoes                | ticks                 |
| 1.  | When your temp     | erature is abov   | e normal, you have a _    |                       |
| 2.  | Your boss can't    |                   | you without a go          | ood reason.           |
| 3.  | Ms. Davis is       |                   | She is going to have      | e a baby in May.      |
| 4.  | The train          |                   | in my area is very good   | d. There's a train    |
|     | every fifteen mir  | nutes.            |                           |                       |
| 5.  | Diseases caused    | by                | cannot be cu              | red with antibiotics. |
| 6.  | Some vaccines ar   | е                 | into the arm;             | others are taken      |
|     | by mouth.          |                   |                           |                       |
| 7.  | She didn't make    | any               | to get a goo              | d grade. She didn't   |
|     | study or even co   | me to class. No   | wonder she failed.        |                       |
| 8.  | If you             | an e              | egg for ten minutes, it v | will become hard.     |
|     |                    |                   | th                        |                       |
|     | the trip.          |                   |                           |                       |
| 10. | Diseases carried   | by                | and                       | enter                 |
|     | the victim's bloo  | d through the b   | pites of these insects.   |                       |
| 11. |                    | enters the        | body when the victim      | breathes the air      |
|     | coughed out by a   | sick person.      |                           |                       |

## C Vocabulary Review

|     | raw materials         | attacked         | dawn                 | tide              |
|-----|-----------------------|------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
|     | hammer                | intensely        | apparent             | pounded           |
|     | swell                 | arteries         | forehead             | recurring         |
| 1.  | Blood is carried from | the heart throu  | igh the              | en integral       |
| 2.  | If you hit your thumb | with a           | , the                | thumb will        |
|     | probably              | up.              |                      |                   |
| 3.  | Sometimes the sky is  | red at           |                      |                   |
| 4.  | Tom got hit on the    |                  | with the ball.       |                   |
| 5.  | The army              | at da            | wn to surprise the   | enemy.            |
| 6.  | Rita has a            | pain             | in the stomach. It o | comes and goes.   |
| 7.  | The waves move high   | ner up on the be | each as the          |                   |
|     | comes in.             |                  |                      |                   |
| 8.  | Iron and cotton are _ |                  |                      |                   |
| 9.  | Dan                   | on the tabl      | e to get everyone's  | attention.        |
| 10. | Everyone in the room  | was studying     | the picture          |                   |
|     | when the door opened  | d. No one even   | noticed that some    | one came in.      |
| 11. | It's                  | to me that y     | ou didn't read the   | article. You don' |
|     | even know what it's a | bout.            |                      |                   |

## **d** Multiple Choice

| 1000 |   |
|------|---|
| 1.   | Coughing is a of tuberculosis.                                |
|      | a. miserable  |
|      | b. epidemic   |
|      | c. symptom  |
| 2.   | Medicine can a disease.                                       |
|      | a. cure   |
|      | b. relieve the symptoms of                                    |
|      | c. prevent  |
| 3.   | Without the Europeans, North and South America would probably |
|      | have  |
|      | a. more Native Americans                                      |
|      | b. no diseases  |
|      | c. no wars  |
| 4.   | Which one of these sentences is <i>not</i> true?              |
|      | a. Antibiotics can be expensive.                              |
|      | b. Antibiotics have saved the lives of many sick people.      |
|      | c. Antibiotics will help cure diseases caused by viruses.     |
| 5.   | prevent some diseases.  |
|      | a. There is no vaccine to                                     |
|      | b. You can have a vaccine injected into your arm to           |
|      | c. both a and b   |
| 6.   | Tuberculosis spreads  |
|      | a. by hand contact  |
|      | b. when people cough and sneeze                               |
|      | c. when people don't eat garlic                               |
| 7.   | The best way to avoid epidemics is to                         |
|      | a. lock sick people up inside their houses                    |

Instagram:@IELTS\_Matters

b. take lots of vitamins

c. provide health care for people in crowded cities



#### Comprehension Questions

- 1. Name the symptoms of influenza.
- 2. What does medicine do for diseases?
- 3. Is it worth the expense to take extra vitamins?
- 4. How do epidemics spread?
- 5. How can epidemics change history?
- 6. Do you think you should or should not shake hands with someone who is ill? Why?
- 7. Why do poor people in big cities have the most health problems?
- 8. Why do people who live in the city have more health problems than people who live in the country (outside of cities)?
- 9. How can humans prevent diseases from becoming epidemics?



#### Main Idea

What is the main idea of each of these paragraphs?

- 1. Paragraph 2 (lines 10-15)
- 2. Paragraph 4 (lines 29-36)
- 3. Paragraph 6 (lines 42-51)
- 4. Paragraph 9 (lines 71–76)



#### Cause and Effect

Write the effect for each of these causes.

| Cause   | Effect                |
|---|-----------------------|
| 1. A virus enters the body.                       |                       |
| 2. People take medicine.                          |                       |
| 3. A person with tuberculosis coughs.             | 1 2 5 6 6 1 12 ° 11 - |
| 4. A vaccine is injected into the body.           |                       |
| 5. A student drinks from a sick roommate's glass. |                       |



#### Word Forms

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

|    | Verb      | Noun           | Adjective      | Adverb          |
|----|-----------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. |           | (im)politeness | (im)polite     | (im)politely    |
| 2. |           | cruelty        | cruel          | cruelly         |
| 3. | relieve   | relief         | relieved       | <b>美国的</b> 国际中的 |
| 4. | volunteer | volunteer      | (in)voluntary  | (in)voluntarily |
| 5. | inject    | injection      |                |                 |
| 6. |           | pregnancy      | pregnant       |                 |
| 7. |           | contagion      | contagious     | contagiously    |
| 8. | lengthen  | length         | long           |                 |
| 9. | reason    | reason         | (un)reasonable | (un)reasonably  |

| 1. | The idea of is different from one country to another. |
|----|---|
| 2. | It is to hit a very old or sick person.               |
| 3. | Mary felt when she found out her daughter had         |
|    | arrived safely at her grandparents' home.             |
| 4. | Mark did not go into the army He went because it is   |
|    | the law that all young men must serve in the army.    |
| 5. | Children don't like to have                           |
| 6. | A human lasts nine months.                            |
| 7. | Heart trouble is not                                  |
| 8. | In the spring, the days start to                      |
| 9. | Mehdi was very angry. We tried to with him, but he    |
|    | was completely and wouldn't listen at all             |

#### Two-Word Verbs

Learn these two-word verbs and then fill in the blanks with the right words. Use the correct verb form.

| ase the correct cere form.  |     |
|---|-----|
| grow out of = stop doing or feeling (something) as one becomes older get out of = avoid doing show up = appear; arrive put off = delay read up on = get facts and information on (a subject) by reading |     |
| 1. Hiroko always tries to talking in front of the class   |     |
| because she doesn't like to do it.  |     |
| 2. Tom had planned to go to the shopping center today, but he   |     |
| it until the weekend because  |     |
| he's so busy.   |     |
| 3. Children sleepwalking when they  |     |
| become adolescents.   |     |
| 4. Marge is going to photovoltaic cells because she   |     |
| wants to know more about them.  |     |
| 5. Bob didn't for the party until almost midnight.  |     |
| j Articles  |     |
| Put articles in the blanks if they are needed.  |     |
| 1. Millions of people around world do not have go   | od  |
| health care.  |     |
| 2. Sometimes doctor does not know how to treat disease, a   | nd  |
| sometimes there is no treatment.  |     |
| 3 people have all kinds of ideas about how to prevent and   |     |
| treat diseases.   |     |
| 4 explosive cough or sneeze sends bacteria shooting out in  | ıto |
| air.  |     |
| 5. Then they enter mouth or nose of anyone nearby.  |     |
| 6. Some diseases spread when people touch same  |     |
| dishes, towels, and furniture.  |     |
| 2 56 💍  |     |
| $\omega$  |     |

| 7. | Some countries like United States spend much more health-care |
|----|---|
|    | money on treatment for diseases than on programs to prevent   |
|    | disease in first place.                                       |



#### Summarizing

Summarize paragraph 3, lines 16–28. Use your own words to tell the main idea in no more than three or four sentences.



#### **Guided Writing**

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. You are a health-care worker who is going into a poor area of a big city. You have seen several cases of tuberculosis and influenza this month. You are going to try to prevent an epidemic among the people in this area. What will you say to the people?
- 2. A government official in your country has asked you for your suggestions about improving health care. What will you say to the official?

#### lesson

4

## Medicine: From Leeches to Lasers



#### Before You Read

- 1. Based on the title of this lesson, what do you think the reading is about?
- 2. What do you think this doctor is holding up?
- 3. What are some examples of traditional and modern medicine?

#### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

- 1. A man named Hippocrates **concluded** that people became sick for natural reasons, not because the gods were angry. He also believed that there was a connection between diet and health.
- 2. During the time of Hippocrates, doctors **prescribed** massage, special diets, and baths as medical treatments for their patients.
- 3. In the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, many **remarkable** discoveries were made in medicine. These discoveries saved the lives of millions of people around the world.
- 4. Hospitals now have large computers and machines that help doctors diagnose medical problems.

#### 4 **Medicine: From** Leeches to Lasers



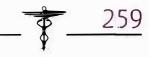
What do lasers, <u>leeches</u>, tree bark, and old bread have a type of worm in common? They are all things that people use to make medicine or to help sick people feel better. Throughout history, people have searched for ways to live healthier

that sucks, or takes

- 5 and better lives. As early as 8000 B.C., people were experimenting with methods of helping sick people. Today, we have very modern technology, yet we continue to look for ways to improve medicine and our system of health care.
- 10 The history of medicine extends back thousands of years. We know that, from the earliest times, people used plants as medicine. Scientists have also found evidence that people experimented with <u>surgery</u> 10,000 years ago.

People haven't always gone to doctors to get medical 15 help. In Egypt around 3000 B.C., people went to their

opening up the body to fix it



Lesson 4: Medicine: From Leeches to Lasers

Egyptians believed that the gods made people sick when they were angry with them. Common remedies in Egypt at this time included garlic and onions to prevent epidemics and moldy bread to heal wounds. Around this time, however, people in Egypt were also learning more about sanitation.

Archaeologists there have found the ruins of elaborate bathrooms and sewerage systems.

In Greece in 410 B.C., a man named Hippocrates concluded that people became sick for natural reasons, not because the gods were angry. He also believed that there was a connection between diet and health.

During his time, doctors prescribed massage, special diets, and baths as medical treatments for their patients.

In China and other Asian countries, doctors developed acupuncture as a method of treating sickness and pain. Acupuncture uses **needles** to help the human body fight pain and disease. Doctors have used this method for thousands of years, and many still use it today.

During the Middle Ages (400–1500 A.D.), a few medical schools and hospitals opened in Europe. At this time, however, doctors considered themselves to be primarily observers of patients. For them, surgery was a menial task, something a barber should do. One common medical treatment during the Middle Ages was the use of leeches to remove "bad blood" from people. Doctors thought this "bloodletting" was good for many illnesses. Unfortunately, many plagues spread through

Europe at that time. Doctors could not cure these diseases, and one quarter of the population of Europe died. It didn't help that, in the Middle Ages, many people believed that bathing could be <u>fatal</u>. It wasn't uncommon for people to bathe just once a year!

After the invention of the printing press in the midfifteenth century, books on health and medicine became available. Leonardo da Vinci's drawings of the human body, including all the muscles, helped doctors tremendously. Understanding the human body helped doctors treat sicknesses and make people feel better. having a fungus

ways to keep things clean and germ-free for the removal of waste

low-skill

deadly; causing death



In the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, many remarkable discoveries were made in medicine. These discoveries saved the lives of millions of people around the world. For example, in 1895, a German doctor named Roentgen developed the X-ray machine. In 1928, the English scientist Sir Alexander Fleming discovered penicillin, the first antibiotic. Fleming discovered penicillin growing in mold on an old piece of bread!

Great advances in the technology of medicine
continue to be made. Today, doctors can save people's
lives by giving them a new heart or a new **kidney**.
Hospitals now have large computers and machines that help doctors **diagnose** medical problems.

Although modern medicine is making many new treatments possible, doctors are learning that some of the old ways are useful too. For example, doctors are now paying more attention to the connection between diet and health. Even the leech has found a place in modern medicine. In certain kinds of surgery, up-to-date surgeons are using leeches to prevent a patient's arteries from getting plugged up.

Some people believe that nature has all of the cures for human problems. Others believe that technology is more helpful. It just might be that, together, tradition and technology will help people everywhere live better and healthier lives.



### Vocabulary

|     | improve<br>leech   | evidence<br>elaborate | surgery<br>sewerage  | sanitation concluded  |
|-----|--------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
|     | needle             | menial                | fatal                | drawing               |
| 1.  | They have an _     |                       | garden behind t      | their house. They mus |
|     | work on it for he  | ours every day.       |                      |                       |
| 2.  | After carefully s  | tudying the X-ra      | y of his arm, the d  | octors                |
|     |                    | that it was           | n't broken.          |                       |
| 3.  | The doctors gav    | e the patient son     | nething to make his  | m sleep               |
|     | during             |                       |                      |                       |
| 4.  | The                | Depart                | ment in our city ha  | as to inspect all     |
|     | restaurants to m   | ake sure that the     | ey are clean.        |                       |
| 5.  | During the bad     | storm, all the        |                      | from the city went    |
|     | right into the riv | er.                   |                      |                       |
| 6.  | A doctor uses a    |                       | when she give        | es you an injection.  |
| 7.  | When he walked     | d out of the lake,    | there was a          | on                    |
|     | his leg.           |                       |                      |                       |
| 8.  | I don't mind doi   | ng                    | jobs, becau          | ise I can think about |
|     | other things at th | ne same time.         |                      |                       |
| 9.  | He said that his   | neighbor stole h      | is boat, but he didn | 't have any           |
|     |                    | to prove it.          |                      |                       |
| 10. | You will probabl   | ly feel better if yo  | ou                   | your diet.            |

#### Vocabulary

|    |                             |                  | diagnose<br>evident<br>surgeon | fatal<br>improvement |
|----|-----------------------------|------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. | If you leave the bread o    | ut for too long, | it will get                    | ×                    |
|    | The doctors needed sev      |                  | 0                              |                      |
|    | his problem.                | ,                |                                |                      |
| 3. | Luckily everyone in the     | car was wearin   | ng a seatbelt. Oth             | nerwise, it might    |
|    | have been a                 |                  | 0                              |                      |
| 4. | I can't understand your     | directions. Cou  | ıld you                        | me                   |
|    | a map?                      |                  |                                |                      |
| 5. | Most people have two _      |                  | located in t                   | heir lower back.     |
| 6. | It's                        | to handle food   | d without first w              | ashing your hands.   |
|    | At the                      |                  |                                |                      |
|    | The patient made great      |                  | •                              |                      |
|    | Vocabulary Reviev           | v: Synonyms      | _                              |                      |
| M  | atch the words that mean th | ne same.         |                                |                      |
|    | 1. analyze                  | a. a lot         |                                |                      |
|    | 2. miserable                |                  |                                |                      |
|    | 414                         | c. teenager      |                                |                      |
|    | 4. a great deal             | d. study         |                                |                      |
|    | 5. meanwhile                | _ *              |                                |                      |
|    | 6. nightmare                | f. forever       |                                |                      |
|    | 7. confused                 | g. at the sam    | ie time                        |                      |
|    | 8. adolescent               | h. location      |                                |                      |
|    | 9. permanently              | i. painful       |                                |                      |
|    | 10. sore                    | j. unhappy       |                                | ×                    |
|    | 11. dawn                    | k. empty         |                                |                      |
|    | 12. position                | l. sunrise       |                                |                      |
|    |                             | m. mixed up      |                                |                      |
|    |                             | n. bad dream     | ı                              |                      |
|    |                             |                  |                                |                      |

Lesson 4: Medicine: From Leeches to Lasers

### d

#### True/False/No Information

Surgery is a very recent type of medical treatment.
 Doctors were very busy in ancient Egypt.
 People weren't interested in cleanliness until the nineteenth century.
 Leeches have always been used to help patients.
 Acupuncture was not popular in Europe during the Middle Ages.
 Leonardo da Vinci was a medical doctor.
 The X-ray machine was developed before the discovery of penicillin.
 An X-ray machine can help doctors diagnose a broken bone.
 There is no good reason for doctors to study cures and treatments



#### Comprehension Questions

1. When did doctors first do surgery?

of the past.

2. Why did Egyptians go to their priests for medical help instead of to their doctors?

\_\_\_\_ 10. The first antibiotic was found growing on bread.

- 3. What was medical care like in ancient Egypt?
- 4. Compare the medical care in Egypt in 3000 B.C. and in Greece in 410 B.C.
- 5. What is acupuncture?
- 6. What was unusual about a doctor's work in the Middle Ages in Europe?
- 7. What effect did the invention of the printing press have on medical care?
- 8. What do you think is one of the most remarkable discoveries in medicine? Why?



#### Main Idea

What is the main idea of each of these paragraphs?

- 1. Paragraph 2 (lines 10–13)
- 2. Paragraph 5 (lines 31–35)
- 3. Paragraph 7 (lines 50-55)



#### Prepositions

| Put the                                 | right preposition in each blan | k.   |
|---|--------------------------------|--|
| 1. Wha                                  | at do lasers, leeches, tree ba | rk, and old bread have common?   |
| 2. Thro                                 | oughout history, people hav    | re searched ways to live healthier   |
| and                                     | better lives.                  |  |
| 3. In C                                 | China and other Asian count    | ries, doctors developed acupuncture  |
|   | a method treatii               | ng sickness and pain.  |
| 4. Doct                                 | tors have used this method     | thousands of years.  |
| 5. Afte                                 | er the invention the           | printing press the mid-fifteenth   |
| cent                                    | ury, books health ar           | nd medicine became available.  |
| 6. Grea                                 | at advances the tech           | nology medicine continue to  |
| be m                                    | nade.                          |  |
| 7. Toda                                 | ay, doctors can save people'   | s lives giving them a new heart.   |
| 000000000000000000000000000000000000000 |                                |  |
| h                                       | Compound Words and T           | wo-Word Verbs  |
| second c                                |                                | word from the first column with one from the<br>r is correct for several of the words. Some of<br>trately as two-word verbs. |
|   | 1. break                       | a. in  |
|   | 2. stand                       | b. down  |
|   | 3. work                        | c. work  |
|   | 4. check                       | d. mate  |
|   | 5. sun                         | e. rise  |
|   | 6. home                        | f. night   |
|   | 7 slean                        | g hy   |

h. grow

i. walk

j. way

k. time

l. out

26 5

Lesson 4: Medicine: From Leeches to Lasers

\_\_\_ 8. out

\_\_\_\_\_10. over

\_\_\_\_\_\_ 11. air

9. life

\_\_ 12. room



#### Word Forms

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

| Verb Noun |           | Adjective    | Adverb       |                |
|-----------|-----------|--------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1.        | improve   | improvement  |              |                |
| 2.        |           | evidence     | evident      | evidently      |
| 3.        |           | sanitation   | (un)sanitary | (un)sanitarily |
| 4.        | elaborate | elaboration  | elaborate    | elaborately    |
| 5.        |           | similarity   | (dis)similar | (dis)similarly |
| 6.        | prescribe | prescription |              |                |
| 7.        | medicate  | medicine     | medical      | medically      |
| 8.        |           | fatality     | fatal        | fatally        |
| 9.        | diagnose  | diagnosis    | diagnostic   | diagnostically |

| 1. | There has been a tremendous _ | in surgical methods |
|----|-------------------------------|---------------------|
|    | over the past century.        |                     |
|    |                               |                     |

- 2. The newspaper gave a great description of the event. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_someone from the newspaper saw the whole thing.
- 3. Everything in the operating room must be \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 4. I don't understand your explanation. Could you please \_\_\_\_\_?
- 5. What is the \_\_\_\_\_\_ between snow and hail?
- 6. What did the doctor \_\_\_\_\_\_ for your headache? Did he give you a \_\_\_\_\_?
- 7. Jane wants to go to \_\_\_\_\_\_ college and become a doctor.
- 8. There were two \_\_\_\_\_\_ in yesterday's car accident on Route 34.
- 9. She went to three different doctors to get a \_\_\_\_\_\_.



#### Summarizing

Write a summary of the text for this lesson. Write only the most important information, using three to five sentences.



#### Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. What would you like and not like about being a doctor during the Middle Ages in Europe?
- 2. Do you think it's important to study the history of medicine? Why or why not?

# lesson 5

## Cholesterol and Heart Disease





#### Before You Read

- 1. Do you have a healthy diet? Why do you think so?
- 2. What effect can exercise have on heart disease?
- 3. Is it difficult or easy to change your lifestyle? Why?

#### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

- 1. Some people say that heart disease is not really a serious problem. They think the danger of heart disease is **exaggerated**.
- 2. A natural substance in the blood, **cholesterol** comes from the liver.
- 3. **Angiograms** are X-rays of the heart arteries.
- 4. People often **complain** about low-fat diets. They say that the food doesn't taste good.
- 5. Doctors can use a special camera to watch a person's blood circulating through the arteries.

### 5 Cholesterol and Heart Disease

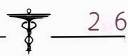


Do you know your **cholesterol** level? A high level of cholesterol in the blood is an important **risk factor** for heart disease, so it's a good idea to know your cholesterol level.

Some people say that the danger of heart disease is <a href="mailto:exaggerated">exaggerated</a>. However, heart disease is a main cause of death in developed countries. Every year, more than 1 million Americans have heart attacks, and half of them die. People with heart disease suffer chest pains that make simple activities, such as walking, shaving, or taking a shower, difficult.

Research has proven that cholesterol levels are connected with heart disease. One project in Massachusetts has studied the same group of fifteen men and women since 1948. The researchers have found

said to be more than it is



that the people who have high levels of cholesterol have more heart attacks.

A natural **substance** in the blood, cholesterol comes from the liver. The amount of cholesterol is affected 20 by diet and by physical qualities people inherit from their parents. One kind of cholesterol sticks fat to the wails of arteries, making the arteries smaller and finally blocking them. It produces a condition called "hardening of the arteries," which causes heart attacks.

25 With tiny cameras, doctors can see blood circulating through the heart valves. Angiograms are X-rays of the heart arteries. They show fat deposits and blockages caused by high cholesterol.

Heart disease begins in children as young as 3 years 30 old. It occurs earlier in boys than in girls. Nearly half of teenagers have some fat deposits on their artery walls. Heart disease develops faster if you have a high cholesterol leve! and you also smoke.

What is a safe level of cholesterol? Adults have a 35 high risk of heart attack if their cholesterol level is above 240 milligrams per deciliter of blood. Below 200 is better. In the Massachusetts study, no one with a cholesterol level below 150 has ever had a heart attack. However, about half of American adults have 40 cholesterol levels above 200.

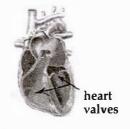
To lower your cholesterol level, you must change your eating habits. Anything that comes from an animal is high in fat and high in cholesterol. The American Heart Association National Cholesterol Education

45 Program says that fat should be no more than 30% of your diet. Blood cholesterol levels start to fall after two to three weeks of following a low-cholesterol, low-fat diet. Dietary changes alone can result in a 10% <u>reduction</u> of the average person's cholesterol level.

50 Aerobic exercise helps, too. Artery blockage can be reduced by as much as 40% through changes in diet and amount of exercise.

We should educate everyone, including children in elementary schools, about the danger of cholesterol. We 55 should teach them responsibility for their health

get



decrease

increasing oxygen intake (for example, walking, running, and swimming are aerobic exercise)



through classes in nutrition and aerobic exercise. For example, the smart <u>snack</u> is fruit. Children should be served fruit in the school cafeteria, along with low-fat meals. Schools should send <u>recipes</u> home with children.

Parents should include children in planning and preparing meals and shopping for food.

Adults, including people over the age of 65, can lower their cholesterol by 30 or 40%. It is never too late to change. One man began his health program when he was 73. By the time he was 77, he had lowered his arterial blockage from 50% to 13% and his cholesterol from 320 to 145 without drugs. He went on a vegetarian diet with only 10% fat and followed programs to reduce stress and get more exercise.

A low-cholesterol diet that cuts out most animal products and high-fat vegetables may be <u>unfamiliar</u> to people. The Heart Association says to use no added fat of any kind. Don't fry food in oil. Cook it in water, vinegar, or vegetable water. Learn about grains and vegetables. Avoid egg yolks (the yellow part of the egg). Eat potatoes, beans, low-fat vegetables, and fruit. People often <u>complain</u> about low-fat diets before they have had time to get used to them. Food can taste good without cream, butter, and salt. You can use olive oil, mustard, fresh herbs, or yogurt instead.

A new diet can cause general **anxiety**, when people feel worried and nervous about what is going to happen. They must learn to <u>deal with</u> the changes in their lives. Sometimes major changes in diet or lifestyle are easier than minor ones because the results are bigger and occur faster. Fast results **encourage** us.

How can you control the amount of fat in your diet if you eat in restaurants? Restaurants should provide healthy meals that are low in fat, salt, and cholesterol. A diet is a <u>personal</u> thing. Restaurant owners should not make customers feel embarrassed because they want to follow a diet that is good for them. Restaurant owners must learn to give equal service to customers on a healthy diet. Some restaurants have items on the menu marked with a heart to show that they are low in fat,

something small that can be eaten fast

instructions for cooking

strange; unknown

say they don't like

cope with

private; about oneself



cholesterol, salt, and/or sugar. A few restaurants serve only these items.

Education programs, such as the American Heart Association National Cholesterol Education Program, cost money but can bring results. In 1983, only 35% of the American public knew their cholesterol levels. By 2000, 60% of the people had had theirs checked.

People feel better if they lower their cholesterol through diet. Healthy people are more **confident**. They are more **attractive** to themselves, as well as to others. Their friends **stare** at them because they look so healthy.

We can prevent heart disease by living a healthful lifestyle and eating the right kind of diet. If people don't do this, two out of three men and women in the United States will eventually get heart disease.

pretty; handsome look intensely



#### Vocabulary

-----

|     | confidence               | anxiety          | State              |              | nerbs      |
|-----|--------------------------|------------------|--------------------|--------------|------------|
|     | aerobic                  |                  | encourage          |              | valve      |
|     | unfamiliar               | inherited        | personal           |              | snack      |
| 1.  | John's parents           | l                | nim to stay in sci | hool, even   | though his |
|     | grades were not very     | good.            |                    |              |            |
| 2.  |                          | exercise is good | l for the heart.   |              |            |
| 3.  | Is it impolite to ask so | meone            | qu                 | estions?     |            |
| 4.  | Students often suffer    | from             | befor              | re an exam   |            |
| 5.  | i                        | mprove the tas   | te of food.        |              |            |
| 6.  | Some people are          |                  | _ with a low-fat   | diet.        |            |
| 7.  | Mark                     | red hair f       | rom his mother.    |              |            |
| 8.  | It is impolite to        |                  | at people.         |              |            |
| 9.  | If you drive carelessly  | , you take a     |                    |              |            |
| 10. | I'm hungry now, but i    | t's two hours u  | ntil dinner. I thi | nk I'll have |            |
|     | a                        |                  |                    |              |            |

| 11. | Open thethe pipes.                  | so                                     | that th | e water will   | flow freely the | nrough    |
|-----|-------------------------------------|--|---------|----------------|-----------------|-----------|
| 12. | If you are sure of yo               | ourself, you ha                        | ve      |                | in your         | self.     |
| b   | Vocabulary                          |  |         |                |                 |           |
|     | factor<br>attractive<br>exaggerated | circulated<br>reduction<br>cholesterol |         | deposit        | angiog          | ram       |
|     | Many television sta                 | rs are                                 |         |                |                 |           |
|     | Δ                                   |  | •       |                |                 |           |
| 3.  | Ayou healthier.                     | in now mu                              | ich rat | you eat mig.   | nt make         |           |
| 4.  | Please give me a cop                | oy of the                              |         | for            | that deliciou   | s soup.   |
| 5.  | Please                              | your b                                 | ooks i  | n the box at   | the back of th  | ne room.  |
| 6.  | It is difficult to                  |  | _ a ch  | ild who doe    | sn't behave w   | æll.      |
| 7.  | Smoking is a                        |  | in mai  | ny diseases o  | of the heart    |           |
|     | and lungs.                          |  |         |                |                 |           |
|     | Tom said that he ear<br>He          |  | eek, b  | ut he is reall | y paid only \$  | 800.      |
| 9.  | The doctor wants m                  | y mother to ha                         | ve an   |                | to se           | ee if her |
|     | arteries are blocked.               |  |         |                |                 |           |
| 10. | Ali always                          | th                                     | at he h | as too much    | homework.       |           |
| 11. | There's a strange                   |  | on      | the table. It  | looks like wa   | ater, but |
|     | it isn't.                           |  |         |                |                 |           |
| 12. | While the students v                | vere reading, t                        | he teac | her            |                 | around    |
|     | the room to ask then                | n questions.                           |         |                |                 |           |

Instagram:@IELTS\_Matters

#### Vocabulary Review: Definitions

| Match the words w | with the definitions. |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
|-------------------|-----------------------|

a. length of time \_\_\_\_ 1. tremendously \_\_\_\_\_ 2. period b. at the same time \_\_\_\_\_ 3. habit c. stage \_\_\_\_\_ 4. meanwhile d. germ free \_\_\_\_\_ 5. fever e. grind f. something that supports a statement \_\_\_\_\_ 6. pregnant \_\_\_\_ 7. elaborate g. watch \_\_\_\_ 8. evidence h. very detailed \_\_\_\_\_ 9. sanitary i. anxious \_\_\_\_\_ 10. solar i. usual action \_\_\_\_ 11. observe k. high body temperature l. of the sun m. very much n. going to become a mother

### True/False/Not Enough Information

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. About 500,000 Americans die each year from heart disease. 2. More than twice as many people had their blood cholesterol levels checked in 2000 as in 1983. \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Smoking can be a risk factor for heart disease. 4. No direct relationship has been proven between high cholesterol levels and heart attacks. \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Girls have no risk of heart disease. \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Low-fat diets always taste bad. 7. Children should learn more responsibility for eating healthful food. 8. People usually feel good about going on a new diet. 9. It can be easier to change our diet a lot than to change it a little. \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Old people shouldn't bother to change their eating habits because

it's too late for it to do them any good.



#### Comprehension Questions

- 1. What are some symptoms of heart disease?
- 2. What is hardening of the arteries? How is it connected with high cholesterol?
- 3. Why are angiograms useful?
- 4. At what age does heart disease start?
- 5. What level of cholesterol is believed to be safe?
- 6. How long does it take for cholesterol levels to start to drop?
- 7. How can parents help teach children healthy eating habits?
- 8. What are some ways to reduce fat in your diet?



#### Main Idea

What is the main idea of each of these paragraphs?

- 1. Paragraph 4 (lines 18-28)
- 2. Paragraph 6 (lines 34-40)
- 3. Paragraph 9 (lines 62–69)



## Word Forms

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

| Verb        | Noun   | Adjective  | Adverb  |  |
|-------------|--|--|---|--|
|             | anxiety  | anxious  | anxiously   |  |
| encourage   | encouragement  | encouraged   | encouragingly   |  |
| discourage  | discouragement   | discouraged  | discouragingly  |  |
|             | stress   | stressful  | stressfully   |  |
| personalize | person   | personal   | personally  |  |
|             | stupidity  | stupid   | stupidly  |  |
| attract     | attraction   | (un)attractive   | (un)attractively  |  |
| inherit     | inheritance  | inherited  |   |  |
| familiarize | familiarity  | (un)familiar   | familiarly  |  |
| suggest     | suggestion   | suggested  |   |  |
| complain    | complaint  |  | complainingly   |  |
| exaggerate  | exaggeration   | exaggerated  | exaggeratedly   |  |
| serve       | service  |  |   |  |
|             | encourage discourage personalize attract inherit familiarize suggest complain exaggerate | encourage encouragement discourage discouragement stress personalize person stupidity attract attraction inherit inheritance familiarize familiarity suggest suggestion complain complaint exaggerate exaggeration | anxiety anxious encourage encouragement encouraged discourage discouragement discouraged stress stressful personalize person personal stupidity stupid attract attraction (un)attractive inherit inheritance inherited familiarize familiarity (un)familiar suggest suggestion suggested complain complaint exaggerate exaggeration exaggerated |  |

| 1. | The students waited to hear the results of the test.   |
|----|--|
| 2. | Marie was by the results of her physical exam after a  |
|    | long illness.  |
| 3. | Michael felt when he wasn't accepted at the            |
|    | university that was his first choice.                  |
| 4. | Joan felt a lot of when she stood before the class and |
|    | began her speech.                                      |
| 5. | , I don't mind if people use their cell phones on      |
|    | the train.   |
| 6. | Marie felt because she did the exercise without        |
|    | reading the directions and did it all wrong.           |
|    |  |

| 7.     | Honey flies. Ants also are   |
|--------|--|
|        | by honey.  |
| 8.     | Tom a small business and some money from his                               |
|        | father when his father died. His friend received a large                   |
|        | from his favorite uncle.   |
| 9.     | If you yourself with the language center before the                        |
|        | first day of classes, you will not get confused about where you should go. |
| 10.    | I that we take an exercise class this month. That's a                      |
|        | good   |
| 11.    | If you have any about the television set you bought,                       |
|        | take it back to the store.   |
| 12.    | To say that you couldn't get to sleep at all last night is an              |
|        | You are  |
| 13.    | A waiter food in a restaurant.   |
| 300    |  |
| l line |  |

## h Irregular Verbs

Learn these verbs. Then put the right verb forms in the blanks in the sentences below. Use the first verb in the first sentence, and so on.

|    | Simple      | Past                  | Past Participle              |                 |
|----|-------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. | tear        | tore                  | torn                         |                 |
| 2. | light       | lit or lighted        | lit or lighted               |                 |
| 3. | lie         | lay                   | lain                         |                 |
| 4. | swell       | swelled               | swollen                      |                 |
| 5. | grind       | ground                | ground                       |                 |
| 6. | draw        | drew                  | drawn                        |                 |
| 7. | stick       | stuck                 | stuck                        |                 |
| 8. | deal        | dealt                 | dealt                        |                 |
|    |             |                       |                              |                 |
|    |             |                       |                              |                 |
| 1. | Alice       | h                     | er new blouse.               |                 |
| 2. | Dan         | a 1                   | fire in the living room fire | eplace.         |
| 3. | In some cou | untries, it is the co | ustom to                     | down for a rest |
|    | in the midd | lle of the day.       |                              |                 |
|    |             |                       |                              |                 |

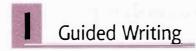
| 4. Ms. Baxter's hand is   | because she shut it in the                             |
|---|--|
| car door.   |  |
| 5. Mr. Thomas   | some fresh coffee beans and made coffee.               |
| 6. The children   | _ a picture of a big animal on the wall                |
| outside their school.   |  |
| 7. The roadrunner   | out its head when it runs.                             |
| 8. Mr. Nevins is a car dealer. He   | in new and used cars.                                  |
| Two-Word Verbs: Review  | •  |
| 1. Sixteen people showed  | for volleyball practice.                               |
| 2. Never put  | until tomorrow what you can do today.                  |
| 3. What time does your plane get  | ?  |
|   | in the city or in the country?                         |
| 5. When he wrote the class list, the  | e teacher left   |
| one student.  |  |
| 6. Do you dress   | for dinner at an expensive restaurant?                 |
| 7. Look! Then   | re's a hole in the sidewalk.                           |
| 8. I have to read   | a subject for  |
| my speech.  |  |
| 9. Kim had a  | warm jacket so I knew it was cold outside.             |
| 10. The Bakers have to buy new sho  | es for their daughter. She grew                        |
|   | her old ones.  |
| 11. We tried to get   | helping our  |
| cousin, but we had to do it.  |  |
| Context Clues   |  |
| Each of the words in <b>bold</b> has more that meaning of the word as it is used in the                                       | n one meaning. Circle the letter of the best sentence. |
| <ol> <li>Mr. Becker has worked in the fiel<br/>a. area of specialization</li> <li>b. place where animals or plants</li> </ol> | are raised   |
| c. place where baseball is played   |  |

- 2. Carolyn is often late for class because she has to walk **so far** from her apartment.
  - a. until now
  - b. such a long distance
  - c. far enough
- 3. There are 2.2 **pounds** in a kilo.
  - a. unit of English money
  - b. hits or strikes
  - c. unit of weight
- 4. Trappers sometimes **cure** the skins of the animals they catch before they sell the skins.
  - a. dry and prepare for use
  - b. make better
  - c. a kind of medicine
- 5. The **current** value of gold is \$321 an ounce.
  - a. movement of electricity
  - b. at this time
  - c. movement of a stream of water in the ocean
- 6. I know that it isn't so.
  - a. very
  - b. therefore
  - c. true
- 7. Ali and Muhammed live in a large apartment complex near the university.
  - a. related group of buildings
  - b. complicated
  - c. anxiety



### Summarizing

Write a summary of the text for this lesson. Write only the important information, using three to five sentences.



Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. You are going to start an educational program about heart disease in your area. How will you do this?
- 2. Your doctor told you that you have to lower your cholesterol. Give a detailed plan of how you will follow the doctor's suggestion.

## Video Highlights



### Before You Watch

- 1. Discuss the questions below with your classmates.
  - a. Do you enjoy going to the doctor? Why or why not?
  - b. The word *cardio-* is a medical word for *heart*. What kind of doctor is a cardiologist?
  - c. Have you seen the picture on the right before? What does it mean?
- 2. The video you are going to watch is about a man who has two jobs. Dr. Cleve Francis is a doctor and a country music performer. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of both jobs. Then complete the chart below. List as many advantages and disadvantages as you can.

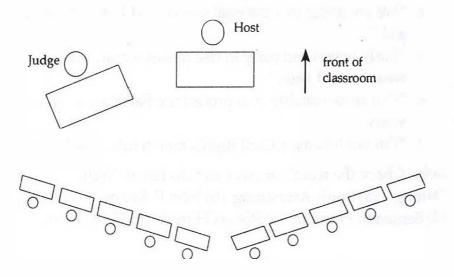


|               | Advantages     | Disadvantages |
|---------------|----------------|---------------|
| Doctor        | 1. good salary | 1. long hours |
|               | 2.             | 2.            |
|               | 3.             | 3.            |
|               |                | The second    |
| Country music | 1.             | 1.            |
| performer     | 2.             | 2.            |
|               | 3.             | 3.            |
|               |                | 200           |
|               |                |               |

| As You Watch   |
|--|
| Complete these sentences about Dr. Francis's two careers.  |
| 1. Dr. Francis has spent his medical career treating patients  |
| with   |
| 2. Now he's singing about the pains of a   |
| C After You Watch  |
| <ol> <li>Watch the video again. Then read the following excerpts.     What conclusion can you draw about Cleve Francis from each one? Check your choices.</li> </ol> |
| a. "Things are looking bright for Cleve Francis. The 46-year-<br>old heart doctor is undergoing a transformation to country<br>music performer."                     |
| He is happy about the change.  |
| He is sorry to leave his career as a cardiologist.   |
| He believes that he is too old to make a career change.  |
| <ul> <li>b. "Francis's journey into country has another trail-blazing<br/>aspect. There are few Black performers in the field."</li> </ul>                           |
| Dr. Francis is not unusual.  |
| There are not many African-American cardiologists.   |
| Most country music performers are not black.   |
| 2. In the video, Dr. Francis expresses several opinions. Do you agree or disagree or have no opinion? Explain your responses to a small group of your classmates.    |
| a. "There is a link between music and medicine."   |
| agree disagree no opinion  |
| b. "If you took away the music, books, and paintings life  |
| would  |
| be bare."  |
| agree disagree no opinion  |
| c. "The older you are, the better."  |
| agree disagree no opinion  |

### Who Said What?

Play this game with a group of your classmates. Choose one student in the group to be the Game Host and another to be the Judge. The rest of the students will be on Team A or Team B. All students except the Host and the Judge must keep their books closed during the game.



*Host:* Follow these three steps to begin the game.

#### 1. Write this list on the board:

Robert Louis Stevenson English writer

Cleve Francis American cardiologist and singer

Louis Armstrong American jazz trumpeter

Benjamin Franklin American philosopher

John F. Kennedy American president Madonna American singer

Robert Hunter American environmentalist

#### 2. Read this introduction aloud to the two teams:

"I am going to read a quotation aloud. One person on a team will have a chance to guess which of these people said it. If that person gets it wrong, a person on the other team gets a chance. Are you ready?"

- 3. Choose a quotation from this list. Ask Team A first, then Team B, and so on.
  - a. "All music is folk music. I haven't ever heard a horse sing a song."
  - b. "Ask not what your country can do for you, ask what you can do for your country."
  - c. "We are living in a material world, and I am a material girl."
  - d. "Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise."
  - e. "Our responsibility is to protect the Earth for a million years."
  - f. "I'm not leading a Civil Rights march into country music."

Judge: Check the team's answer and declare it "right" or "wrong": (a) Louis Armstrong (b) John F. Kennedy (c) Madonna (d) Benjamin Franklin (e) Robert Hunter (f) Cleve Francis

## **Dictionary Page**

## **Learning About Word Stress**

Your dictionary shows which syllable in a word is stressed. The mark showing the syllable with primary (heaviest) stress in the word *influenza* is pointed out below.

in-flu-en-za / Influenzə / n. [U] a contagious illness spread by viruses: Influenza killed millions in 1918, but now there is a shot that prevents it.

1. Look up these words and underline the syllable with primary stress. Practice saying the words with a partner.

Example: influenza

| antibiotic | malaria       |
|------------|---------------|
| anxiety    | medicine      |
| caffeine   | mosquito      |
| cancer     | nightmare     |
| diet       | resuscitation |
| exercise   | surgery       |
| bacteria   | tuberculosis  |
| headache   | vaccination   |
|            |               |

2. Now group the words in the chart below.

| Health Problems | Causes   | Solutions |  |
|-----------------|----------|-----------|--|
| malaria         | mosquito | medicine  |  |
|                 |          |           |  |
|                 |          |           |  |
|                 |          |           |  |
|                 |          |           |  |
|                 |          |           |  |
|                 |          |           |  |



## Vocabulary

a

a great deal 237 aborigines 3 accident 124 active 213 actually 100 addictive 239 adjust 155 adolescents 238 adopted 13 advancements 145 advantages 145 aerobic 270 afford 70 agricultural 80 alarm 211 already 58 alternating 191 analyze 228 angiograms 270 anthropologists 155 antibiotics 248 anxiety 271 apparent 239 archaeologists 99 architects 145 arteries 227 articles 12 as well as 80 ashore 23 aspirin 228 astonishing 190 at times 32 atmosphere 190 attacks 212 attractive 272 available 58

b

backwards 155 bacteria 170 balance 169 base 3 batteries 100 beams 145 beggar 13 belongings 32 bilingual 135 biological 210 blank 238 blind 32 blizzards 31 block 239 blurred 227 bodies 32 boiling 249 bombs 146 borders 12 borrow 134 bothers 124 boundary 200 brain 135 branches 89 broad 154 broke down 31 built 3 burst 180

C

caffeine 212
carbon dioxide 170
carpet 90
carries 114
cave 12
centers 146
characters 133

childhood 12 cholesterol 269 chosen 3 chronic 58 circulating 270 civil war 13 clear 90 clockwise 156 cluster 228 colonies 169 combined 58 commercial 59 complain 271 complex 169 concentrate 238 concluded 260 conductor 200 confident 272 confused 238 consider 169 consists of 69 converted 200 cope 180 cough 248 counterclockwise 156 crash 123 creating 170 creatures 41 crucial 58 cruel 248 crush 42 crushed 180 cylinder 42

d

dawn 211 deal with 271 debris 180

decades 23 deep (serious) 101 delays 22 demand 58 density 42 depends on 58 deposits 270 descend 42 designing 145 destruction 90 details 12 developed 59 diagnose 261 diameter 42 diet 114 dispose of 100 diversity 43 divided 134 divorce 71 domestic 80 drawings 260

e

earthquakes 146 edge 31 education 156 effect 59 efficiently 200 effort 248 elaborate 260 elements 169 emphasis 70 empty 91 enclosed 42 encourage 271 end up 100 endangering 32 epicenter 178 epidemics 247

erupted 180 escaped 12 especially 79 estimate 135 even though 115 evidence 259 exactly 146 exaggerated 269 exhausted 32 exist 199 expedition 3 experts 43 exploration 4 export 201 extended 69 extremely 31



fast 212 fatal 260 fear 123 feast 212 fever 249 fields 80 finally 3 financially 70 fingerprint 190 fire (v.) 248 fits (into) 115 floating 180 flood 178 forced 154 forehead 228 forming 133 fresh 23 fuel 32



garbage 99 gathered 23 geography 22 geothermal 181 get along 4 gradually 57 grow up 69



habit 238 halfway 3 hammer 227 hampered 42 harmless 123 hazardous 100 headache 227 heartbeat 211 heights 123 helmet 42 hemisphere 3 herbs 271 heroes 4 hollow 42 household 70 humidity 89



illiterate 80 immigrants 145 import 201 improve 259 in addition 145 in general 125 in good company 156 in order to 22 incentive 42 included 22 industrialization 70 inexhaustible 199 influenza 249 inherit 270 injected 249 inland 31 institutions 249 instructors 125 intense 238 interior 3 investigating 99



jaw 238 jet lag 210 joined 22 journalist 12



keep from 171 kidney 261 knocks 114



laboratory 169 lack 23 landfills last 59 layer 178 leaves .90 leeches 259 lessen 212 level 89 lifestyle 228 lifts 115 lightning 180 like 13 likely 155 limited 58 linguists 135 lives on 33 logical 123 loneliness 4 loose 212 loss 124



magic 199
majority 70
married couple 69
mate 114
mathematicians 191
matter 91
maybe 115
meaningful 133
meanwhile 250
melted 180
memorize 154
menial 260
microscopic 190

mid- 191 migraine 227 migrate 211 mild 178 miserable 249 mistake 32 modern 99 moisture 89 moldy 260 mosquitoes 248 multiple 191



natural resources 58
nearly 80
necessary 154
needles 260
negative 80
nest 114
network 41
nightmares 238
no longer 91
nonrenewable 59
nuclear 69
nutrients 90



observes 181
occurs 190
of course 80
official 79
on the other hand
100
once in a while 114
opportunities 70
opposite 156
orders 3
ordinarily 191
organization 30
oxygen 91



pain 227 passed (a law) 79 past 135

paths 90 patient 228 pattern 191 periods 238 permanent 239 permitting 156 personal 271 phobia 123 photovoltaic cell 199 physical 228 physicist 170 pick up (catch) 248 plague 248 planets 169 pleasant 145 positions 80 positive 79 pounding 227 predict 57 prefer 154 pregnant 249 prescribed 260 presents 114 pressure 42 projects 169 property 180 proved 23 provide for 32 psychologists 125 public 145 published 79

r

ran away 12
ranged 179
rate 135
rather 41
raw materials 201
real 12
realized 23
reasonable 200
rechargeable 100
recipes 271
recurring 228
recyclables 100
reduction 270
referred to 134

region 89 relatives 70 relief 238 reluctant 201 remained 13 remaining 90 remarkable 261 remind 23 remote 13 research 13 respond 154 revealed 100 rhythm 210 risk factor 269 rolling 178 roots 90 roughly 41

S

sanitation 260

satellites 170 scattered 179 science fiction 169 search party 4 secret 12 seismic 178 seismology 181 semiconductors 200 senses 154 separate 23 services 248 sewerage 260 shy 114 signal 211 silicon 200 simple 191 since 200 situation 124 skilled 22 skyscraper 144 snack 271 snakes 114 sneeze 248 snoring 239 snowflake 190 so 191 so far 170

sociologists 71 solar 170 soldiers 22 solid-state 200 sore 228 sources 59 space 146 specialists 134 species 42 spiders 114 spot 115 stabilized 71 stages 237 standard of living 58 stare 272 steady 228 stealing 144 sticks out 114 story 145 straight 113 stuttering 155 substance 270 such as 90 suffer 155 supervise 250 supplies 3 supported 12 surface 41 surgery 259 surprising 90 surrounded 12 swamps 3 sweating 238 swell 227 system 133



take care of 70 takeoff 125 tasks 70 technologies 58 temperate 210 temperatures 13 tension 228 terrifying 123 threatened 58 through 90

throughout 79
thunder 180
ticks 248
tides 211
title 144
tons 22
tools 155
traffic 124
transparent 200
trapped 190
tremendously 70
tuberculosis 248
tunnel 124
turn into 3



uneven 31 unfamiliar 271 unique 180 unsuccessful 91 up to 191



vaccination 249
valves 270
vibrations 178
victims 180
viruses 248
vision 227
vitamin 23
volcano 180
vomit 227



warning 227
waste 100
weak 31
whistles 114
wide awake 210
workforce 80



zone 113

ı

## Skills Index

#### **ACTIVITY PAGE** Sentences, 110 Adventure trail, 52 Speed, 26-27 Crossword puzzles, 109, 222 Vocabulary, 5-6, 14-15, 24-25, 33-34, 44-45, Phrases, 165 60-61, 72-73, 81-82, 92-93, 102-103, Who said what?, 283-284 115–117, 125–126, 135–137, 146–148, 156-158, 171-173, 181-183, 192-193, **CHARTS** 202-203, 213-215, 229-230, 250-252, Antonyms, 183 262-263, 272-274 Cause and effect, 174, 254 Antonyms, 34, 103, 137, 183, 230 Dictionary research, 224 Context clues, 11, 21, 30, 41, 57, 69, 79, 89, 99, Reading, 83-84 113, 123, 133, 144, 154, 169, 178, 190, 199, Scanning, 233 210, 227, 237, 247, 259, 269, 278–279 Synonyms, 183 Synonyms, 93, 183 Word forms, 17, 37, 47, 66, 75, 86, 95, 118–119, 129, 140, 150, 159, 185, 207, 232, 244, 255, **SPEAKING** 266, 276 Discussion, 51, 163, 164, 220, 281, 282 Word stress, 285 Partner activities, 221, 285 Writing, 162, 281 **TEST-TAKING SKILLS** Writing notes, 108 Choosing item that does not belong, 126, 203 **DICTIONARY PAGE** Comprehension questions, 7, 16, 26, 36, 46, Definitions, 53-54 63-64, 74, 84, 94, 104, 118, 128, 138, 149, Dictionary research, 223-224 159, 174, 184, 194, 204, 215, 231–232, 242, 254, 264, 275 Grammar codes, 166 Word forms, 110 Fill in blanks, 5–6, 8, 9, 14–15, 17–18, 19, 24–25, Word stress, 285 27–28, 33–34, 37, 38, 39, 44–45, 47–48, 49, 54, 60-61, 64, 65, 66, 67, 72-73, 75-76, **MAPS** 81–82, 85, 86, 92–93, 95–97, 102–103, 105, Reading, 220 115–116, 119, 120, 125–126, 129, 130, **PUNCTUATION** 135–136, 140, 141, 142, 146–147, 150–151, 156-158, 160-161, 171-173, 175-176, Adverbs, 129 181-182, 185-187, 192-193, 195-196, **READING** 202–203, 205–206, 207, 213–215, 216, Cause and effect, 95, 174, 254 217–218, 220, 221, 229–230, 233, 234, Charts, 83-84 240-241, 243, 244-245, 250-252, 255, Comprehension, 7, 16, 26, 36, 38, 46, 63–64, 74, 256-257, 262-263, 265, 266, 272-273, 84, 94, 104, 118, 128, 138, 149, 159, 162, 174, 276-279 184, 194, 204, 215, 231–232, 242, 254, 264, Matching, 25, 34, 51, 53, 73, 82, 93, 95, 103, 116, 275 137, 148, 193, 230, 241, 263, 274 Main ideas, 8, 16, 26, 36, 46, 64, 74, 84, 94, 104, Multiple-choice questions, 8, 15, 16, 26, 35, 36, 106, 118, 128, 138, 149, 159, 174, 184, 194, 46, 62-63, 83-84, 103-104, 121, 127, 204, 216, 232, 242, 254, 264, 275 148-149, 173, 203-204, 221, 230-231, 253, Maps, 220 278–279, 282 Paraphrasing, 94, 138, 184 Sentence completion, 51, 110, 166, 282 Prereading activities, 2, 10, 20, 29, 40, 56, 68, 78, Sequencing, 187, 218 88, 98, 112, 122, 132, 143, 153, 168, 177, 189, Short-answer questions, 46, 85, 187, 194, 242 198, 209, 226, 236, 246, 258, 268 True/false/not enough information questions, Rereading, 27 25, 45, 73–74, 93–94, 117, 137, 158, 183–184,

215, 241–242, 264, 274

Instagram:@IELTS\_Matters

Scanning, 46, 85, 139, 186, 204, 233, 242

| True/false questions, 7, 107                       | Collocations, 39                                     |
|--|--|
| TOPICS   | Compound words, 19, 105, 196, 265                    |
|  | Connecting words                                     |
| Explorers, 1–54                                    | after, 161, 243                                      |
| Bering: Bering Strait, 20–28                       | although, 243  |
| Burke and Wills: Australia, 2–9                    | and, 106, 130  |
| David-Neel: Tibet, 10–19                           | before, 161, 243                                     |
| Ocean exploration, 40–49                           | but, 87, 130   |
| Scott: South Pole, 29–39                           | even though, 120, 130, 218                           |
| Fear of flying, 122–131                            | since, 161, 218, 243                                 |
| Languages and language diversity, 132–142          | until, 161, 218                                      |
| Left-handedness, 153–162                           | when, 161  |
| Medicine and health, 225–285                       | Nouns, 17-18, 36-37, 47, 66, 86, 95-96, 110, 118,    |
| Advances in medicine, 258–267                      | 119, 129, 140, 159–160, 175, 185–186, 207,           |
| Cholesterol and heart disease, 268–280             | 232–233, 244–245, 255, 266, 276                      |
| Headaches, 226–235                                 | Noun substitutes, 96, 141, 175, 234                  |
| Health care and epidemics, 246–257                 | Suffixes, 47   |
| Sleep and dreams, 236–245                          | Prefixes   |
| Roadrunners, 112–121                               | Negative prefixes, 195                               |
| Science, 167–224                                   | semi-, 217   |
| Biological clocks, 209–219                         | Verbs, 150   |
| Biospheres in space, 168–176                       | Prepositions, 28, 48, 120, 217–218, 265              |
| Earthquakes, 177–188                               | Sentence parts, 36                                   |
| Photovoltaic cells, 198-208                        | Suffixes   |
| Snow and hail, 189–197                             | Adjectives, 75                                       |
| Skyscrapers, 143–152                               | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·                |
| World issues, 55–108                               | Nouns, 47  |
| Families, 68–77                                    | Verbs, 150   |
| Garbage Project, 98–106                            | Verbs, 17–18, 27, 37, 47, 66, 86, 95–96, 110, 119,   |
| Population growth, 56-67                           | 129, 140, 159–160, 175, 185–186, 207,                |
| Rain forests, 88–97                                | 232–233, 244–245, 255, 266, 276                      |
| Women, 78–87                                       | Adjectives following verbs, 235                      |
|  | Irregular verbs, 65, 277–278                         |
| VIEWING  | Prefixes, 150  |
| Partner activities, 50, 107, 163                   | Regular verbs, 166                                   |
| Video highlights, 50–51, 107–108, 163–164,         | Suffixes, 150  |
| 220–221, 281–282                                   | Two-word verbs, 8, 38, 53–54, 64, 105, 142,          |
| WORD STUDY   | 151, 186–187, 205, 256, 265, 278                     |
|  | WRITING  |
| Active and passive sentences, 139                  | Charts, 108, 162, 174, 183, 224, 233, 254, 281, 285  |
| Adjectives, 17–18, 37, 47, 65, 66, 75, 86, 95–96,  | Compositions, 9, 19, 28, 39, 49, 67, 77, 87, 97,     |
| 108, 110, 119, 129, 140, 159–160, 185–186,         | 106, 121, 131, 142, 152, 162, 176, 188, 197,         |
| 207, 232–233, 244–245, 255, 266, 276               | 208, 219, 235, 245, 257, 267, 280                    |
| Adjectives following verbs, 235                    | Guided writing, 9, 19, 28, 39, 49, 67, 77, 87, 97,   |
| -ed form, 216                                      | 106, 121, 131, 142, 152, 162, 176, 188, 197,         |
| -ing form, 216                                     | 208, 219, 235, 245, 257, 267, 280                    |
| Participles, 65                                    |  |
| Sentence forms, 206                                | Lists, 163   |
| Suffixes, 75                                       | Paraphrasing, 94, 138, 184                           |
| Adverbs, 17–18, 37, 47, 66, 86, 95–96, 119, 140,   | Reasons for statements, 208                          |
| 159–160, 185–186, 207, 232–233, 244–245,           | Sentences, 7, 51, 64, 74, 84, 87, 94, 104, 106, 108, |
| 255, 266, 276                                      | 128, 131, 138, 149, 159, 165, 174, 184, 194,         |
| -ly ending, 128                                    | 197, 204, 216, 232, 235, 242, 254, 257, 264,         |
| Punctuation, 129                                   | 275  |
| Articles, 9, 18, 48–49, 67, 76, 85–86, 96–97, 130, | Summarizing, 131, 152, 187, 196, 257, 267, 279       |
| 141, 151, 175–176, 195–196, 234, 256–257           |  |





## **Reading & Vocabulary Development Series**

#### **Facts & Figures**

| Text                            | 1-4130-0445-8 |
|---------------------------------|---------------|
| Audio CD                        |               |
| Audio Tape                      | 1-4130-1333-3 |
| CNN® Video for Books 1 & 2      | 1-4130-0610-8 |
| CNN® DVD for Books 1 & 2        | 1-4130-1587-5 |
| Answer Key and Video Transcript |               |
| for Books 1 & 2                 | 1-4130-0609-4 |
| Assessment CD-ROM with          |               |
| ExamView® Pro for Books 1 & 2   | 1-4130-0613-2 |

#### **Thoughts & Notions**

| Text                            | 1-4130-0446-6 |
|---------------------------------|---------------|
| Audio CD                        | 1-4130-1334-1 |
| Audio Tape                      | 1-4130-1335-X |
| CNN® Video for Books 1 & 2      | 1-4130-0610-8 |
| CNN® DVD for Books 1 & 2        | 1-4130-1587-5 |
| Answer Key and Video Transcript |               |
| for Books 1 & 2                 | 1-4130-0609-4 |
| Assessment CD-ROM with          |               |
| ExamView® Pro for Books 1 & 2   | 1-4130-0613-2 |

#### Cause & Effect

| Text                                   | 1-4130-0447-4 |
|--|---------------|
| Audio CD                               | 1-4130-1330-9 |
| Audio Tape                             | 1-4130-1331-7 |
| CNN <sup>e</sup> Video for Books 3 & 4 | 1-4130-0611-6 |
| CNN* DVD for Books 3 & 4               | 1-4130-1588-3 |
| Answer Key and Video Transcript        |               |
| for Books 3 & 4                        | 1-4130-0612-4 |
| Assessment CD-ROM with                 |               |
| ExamView* Pro for Books 3 & 4          | 1-4130-1327-9 |

#### Concepts & Comments NEW LEVEL!

| Text                                      | 1-4130-0448-2 |
|---|---------------|
| Audio CD                                  | 1-4130-1328-7 |
| Audio Tape                                | 1-4130-1329-5 |
| CNN® Video for Books 3 & 4                | 1-4130-0611-6 |
| CNN® DVD for Books 3 & 4                  | 1-4130-1588-3 |
| Answer Key and Video Transcript           |               |
| for Books 3 & 4                           | 1-4130-0612-4 |
| Assessment CD-ROM with                    |               |
| ExamView <sup>2</sup> Pro for Books 3 & 4 | 1-4130-1327-9 |

### www.irLanguage.com

#### ELT INTERNATIONAL CONTACT INFORMATION

#### Asia

#### (Including Japan and India)

Thomson Learning
5 Shenton Way #01-01
UIC Building
Singapore 068808
Tel: 65-6410-1200
Fax: 65-6410-1208
info@thomsonlearning.com.sg
www.thomsonlearningasia.com

#### Australia/New Zealand

Thomson Learning

102 Dodds Street Southbank, Victoria Australia 3006 Tel: 03-9685-4111 Fax: 03-9685-4199 Toll Free 1-800-654-831 www.thomsonlearning.com.au

#### Canada

Thomson Nelson 1120 Birchmount Road Toronto, Ontario M1K 5G4 Tel: 416-752-9100 Fax: 416-752-9646 www.nelson.com

#### Latin America

Thomson Learning Seneca, 53 Colonia Polanco 11560 México D.F México

Tel: 52-55-5281-2906 Fax: 52-55-5281-2656 www.thomsonlearning.com.mx

#### UK/Europe/Middle East/Africa

Thomson Learning High Holborn House 50/51 Bedford Row London, WC1R 4LR United Kingdom Tel: 44-207-067-2500

Tel: 44-207-067-2500 Fax: 44-207-067-2600

www.thomsonlearning.co.uk

#### Spain/Portugal

Thomson Paraninfo Calle Magallanes, 25 28015 Madrid Spain

Tel: 34-91-446-3350 Fax: 34-91-445-6218 www.paraninfo.es For product information in the United States, desk or examination copy requests, or for the name of the Heinle Specialist in your area, call toll-free:

#### 877-633-3375

#### or send requests to:

Thomson/Heinle 25 Thomson Place Boston, MA 02210 Fax: (617) 289-7844

## Examination and desk copy requests must be on school letterhead and include:

- Name
- School
- · School Address with Zip Code
- Phone Number
- Enrollment
- Decision Date
- Book Title and ISBN

Please allow 3–4 weeks for delivery.

#### For information about:

- · Placing an order
- Prices
- Availability of material
- Delivery

#### Call: 800-354-9706

#### Send orders to:

TL Distribution Center Attn: Order Fulfillment 10650 Toebben Drive Independence, KY 41051

PUBNET

Easy Link: 6290-5841

elt.thomson.com



# فروشكاه آنالاين آيلتس مترز

پیشرو در ارائه کتاب ها و منابع با کیفیت زبان انگلیسی و آزمون جامع آیلتس





مجموعه تخصصی آیلتس مترز نامی معتبر و شناخته شده









آدرس وب سایت





آدرس فروشکاه کتاب book.IELTSMatters.com





**FOURTH EDITION** 

### Patricia Ackert | Linda Lee

The new edition of this popular series helps students develop reading skills and systematically increase their active vocabulary from 1,300 to 2,000 words.

- PROVEN systematic pedagogy builds students' reading comprehension.
- NEW and UPDATED thematic readings (five per unit) recycle vocabulary, sentence structure, and content knowledge.
- UPDATED and carefully designed pre- and post-reading activities expand students' skills.
- UPDATED dictionary work builds students' vocabulary.
- NEW Assessment CD-ROM with ExamView® Pro allows instructors to quickly and easily create custom tests and quizzes.
- Audio components contain the readings.
- CNN® clips expand vocabulary and provide authentic input.
- Online activities! elt.thomson.com/readingandvocabulary

### Cause & Effect

| Text<br>Audio CD           |                                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Audio Tape                 |                                |
| CNN® Video for Books 3 & 4 | 1-4130-1588-3<br>1-4130-0612-4 |

Discover the entire Reading & Vocabulary Development series



Facts & Figures 1-4130-0445-8



Cause & Effect 1-4130-0447-4



Thoughts & Notions 1-4130-0446-6



Concepts & Comments 1-4130-0448-2

**International Student Edition** 

Thomson ELT, a part of the Thomson Company, is a leading provider of materials for English Language teaching and learning throughout the world.



Visit Thomson online at elt.thomson.com

For your lifelong learning needs: www.thomson.com/learning